



2026

اشهر واحب كتب تعليمية ، واوسعها انتشارا

Selah El-Telmeez

Since 1960



5

Fifth Primary
Second Term



English



Fifth Year Primary

المواصفة الامتحانية للصف الخامس الابتدائي 2026/2025

(A) Listening

2 Marks

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2 Marks

A listening text of about **SIXTY (60)** words at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FIVE** followed by **FOUR (4)** sentences is provided. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Learners are asked to listen to the text and write (T) True or (F) False.

Half a mark each

(B) Reading

11 Marks

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2 Marks

FOUR (4) MCQs (2 vocabulary and 2 structure) based on the Set Books are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

Half a mark each

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 2 Marks

An unseen text from **FIFTY (50)** to **SIXTY (60)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE (1)** of the **FIVE (5)** words given. The first sentence should be written in full.

Half a mark each

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7 Marks

An unseen literary or informational text from **EIGHTY (80)** to **NINETY (90)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FIVE**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. **TWO (2)** MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options each

Half a mark each

B. **THREE (3)** open-ended questions

2 marks each

The questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.



- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in a text.

(C) Writing 17 Marks**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:****4 Marks**

TWO (2) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets.

2 marks each**6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:****2 Marks**

TWO (2) scrambled statements of not less than **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to reorder the words to form correct sentences.

One mark each**7 Punctuate the following:****4 Marks**

TWO (2) simple statements (a sentence and a question) of about **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Each statement has **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks (Capital Letter, Full stop or Question Mark). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly.

2 marks each**8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the words below:****7 Marks**

Learners are asked to write a paragraph/ fiction story or a narrative text of not less than **FORTY (40)** words using **THREE (3)** guiding elements that can be words, questions...etc.

(Two marks for relevance of ideas – Two marks for vocabulary – One mark for grammar – One mark for spelling – One mark for punctuation)



Fifth Year Primary

قطاع المعاهد الأزهرية
المواصفة الامتحانية للصف الخامس الابتدائي 2026/2025

(A) Listening

6 Marks

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

Pupils are asked to listen to a text of about three or four sentences. Three multiple-choice items are given. Pupils are asked to choose the correct answers.

Two marks each

(B) Language Functions

4 Marks

2 Read and complete the dialog:

Four words are given. Pupils are asked to complete the dialog with these words.

One mark each

(C) Vocabulary and Structures

12 Marks

3 Choose the correct answer:

4 Marks

Four multiple-choice items (two for vocabulary and two for grammar) are given. Pupils are asked to choose the correct answer.

One mark each

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

8 Marks

Pupils are asked to read and correct four underlined mistakes.

Two marks each

(D) Reading Comprehension

10 Marks

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A short text is given. Pupils are asked to read it and answer the questions. (Two true or false questions and three multiple-choice questions).

Two marks each

(E) Writing

8 Marks

6 Write a short paragraph/story/an e-mail:

Pupils are asked to write a paragraph or an e-mail of four sentences based on the material in the set books. Four key words are given and students are asked to use them to write the sentences.

Two marks each sentence

Contents

1 Unit

Hobbies Make Us Shine!

Lesson 1: Show Your Talent	11
Conversation	13
Lesson 1: Homework	16
Lesson 2: Hobbies Matter	17
Language	20
Lesson 2: Homework	23
Lesson 3 (A): The Hobby Club	24
Lesson 3 (B): Word Building Skills	27
Lesson 3: Homework	28
Lessons 4&5: Steps to Start a Hobby/ Think and Create: A Survey	29
Unit (1) Review	35
Reading & Conversation in Points	36
Dictation	37
Conjugation of Verbs	38
Writing Station	39
Important Paragraphs	40
Student's Book Activities	41
Test on unit (1)	42
Al-Azhar Test on unit (1)	45

2 Unit

At the Doctor's

Lesson 1: A Day at the Clinic	48
Conversation	50
Lesson 1: Homework	53
Lesson 2: Staying Healthy at School	54
Language	57
Lesson 2: Homework	59
Lesson 3 (A): Healing Hands, Caring Heart	60
Lesson 3 (B): Word Building Skills	63
Lesson 3: Homework	64
Lessons 4&5: Sick Leave Request/ Think and Create: A Healthy Tip Bookmark	65
Unit (2) Review	70
Reading & Conversation in Points	71
Dictation	72
Conjugation of Verbs	73
Writing Station	74
Important Paragraphs	75
Student's Book Activities	76
Test on unit (2)	77
Al-Azhar Test on unit (2)	80

3 Unit

Suitcase Stories

Lesson 1: Off We Go!	83
Conversation	85
Lesson 1: Homework	88
Lesson 2: Discovering Egypt	89
Language	92
Lesson 2: Homework	95
Lesson 3 (A): A Night under the Stars	96
Lesson 3 (B): Word Building Skills	99
Lesson 3: Homework	100
Lessons 4&5: Writing: Email Invitation/ Think and Create	101
Unit (3) Review	105
Reading & Conversation in Points	106
Dictation	107
Conjugation of Verbs	108
Writing Station	109
Important Paragraphs	110
Student's Book Activities	111
Test on unit (3)	112
Al-Azhar Test on unit (3)	115

Review 1

	Page
Vocabulary Summary	117
Language Summary	118
Review (1) Test (1)	120
Review (1) Test (2)	123
Review (1) Test (3)	126

4

Unit

Jobs in the Animal Kingdom

Lesson 1: How Animals Help Us	130
Conversation	131
Lesson 1: Homework	134
Lesson 2: Amazing Helpers	135
Language	139
Lesson 2: Homework	145
Lesson 3 (A): Farm Friends	146
Lesson 3 (B): Word Building Skills	149
Lesson 3: Homework	150
Lessons 4&5: Writing About Animal Helpers/Think and Create: A Poster	151
Unit (4) Review	156
Reading & Conversation in Points	158
Dictation	159
Conjugation of Verbs	160
Writing Station	161
Important Paragraphs	162
Student's Book Activities	163
Test on unit (4)	164
Al-Azhar Test on unit (4)	167

5

Unit

Our Solar System

Lesson 1: From Mercury to Neptune	170
Conversation	172
Lesson 1: Homework	175
Lesson 2: From Egypt to the Galaxy (Sara Sabry: Reaching for the Stars)	176
Language	179
Lesson 2: Homework	183
Lesson 3 (A): The Planet Project	184
Lesson 3 (B): Word Building Skills	187
Lesson 3: Homework	188
Lessons 4&5: Writing: A Dream in Space/Think and Create: Space Travel Fact File	189
Unit (5) Review	195
Reading & Conversation in Points	196
Dictation	197
Conjugation of Verbs	198
Writing Station	199
Important Paragraphs	200
Student's Book Activities	201
Test on unit (5)	202
Al-Azhar Test on unit (5)	205

6

Unit

Offline but Happy

Story Elements	208
Story Vocabulary	211
Story Scenes	214
Story Practice	219
Student's Book Activities	223
Test on unit (6)	224

Review 2

Vocabulary Summary	227
Language Summary	228
Review (2) Test (1)	230
Review (2) Test (2)	233
Review (2) Test (3)	236

Final Tests

239

Listening Scripts

268

1 Unit

Hobbies Make Us Shine!

Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Express their favorite hobbies using simple sentences
- Share past and present abilities using can / can't / could / couldn't
- Participate in pair and group discussions about hobbies and present ideas confidently
- Role-play hobby-related situations

• التعبير عن هواياتهم المفضلة باستخدام جمل بسيطة

• مشاركة القدرات السابقة والحالية باستخدام can/can't/could/couldn't

• المشاركة في مناقشات ثنائية وجماعية حول الهوايات وتقديم الأفكار بثقة

• لعب أدوار في مواقف متعلقة بالهوايات

Listening

- Recognize and understand vocabulary related to hobbies
- Identify main ideas and details from short dialogs and stories about hobbies
- Follow oral instructions for classroom activities such as surveys or activities

• تعرّف وفهم المفردات المتعلقة بالهوايات

• تحديد أفكار رئيسية وتفاصيل من محادثات وقصص قصيرة عن الهوايات

• اتباع التعليمات الشفهية للأنشطة الصفية مثل الاستبيانات أو الأنشطة

Reading

- Read short texts and stories about hobbies for main ideas and details
- Identify sequencing words in informational texts
- Recognize suffixes (-ment, -ship) in context and understand their meanings
- Answer comprehension questions related to texts

• قراءة نصوص وقصص قصيرة عن الهوايات لاستخلاص الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل

• تحديد كلمات التسلسل في النصوص المعلوماتية

• التعرف على اللواحق (-ment, -ship) في السياق وفهم معانيها

• الإجابة عن أسئلة الفهم المتعلقة بالنصوص

Writing

- Write sentences about their hobby using can / could
- Organize steps for starting a hobby using sequencing words
- Complete a short survey and write answers clearly
- Produce a short-guided paragraph about hobbies with a title, correct spelling, and punctuation

• كتابة جمل عن هواياتهم باستخدام can/could

• تنظيم خطوات بدء ممارسة هواية باستخدام كلمات التسلسل

• إكمال استبيان قصير وكتابة الإجابات بوضوح

• إنتاج فقرة قصيرة موجهة عن الهوايات بعنوان، تهجئة صحيحة، وعلامات ترقيم

 Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:



Play Audio

New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة



playing board games

لعب ألعاب الطاولة



cycling

ركوب الدراجات



skating

التزلج



painting

الرسم



singing

الغناء



solving puzzles

حل الألغاز



playing the piano

العزف على البيانو



crafting with paper

التصميم بالورق

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

hobby	هواية	drawing	الرسم/رسمه	song	أغنية
Maybe	ربما	picture	صورة	story writing	كتابة القصص
sometimes	أحياناً	family	عائلة	journals	مدونات
coloring	التلوين	choices	اختيارات	joy	متعة/مرح

Adjectives الصفات

amazing

مذهل

wonderful

رائع



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
want يريد	wanted	has/have يملك/لديه	had
share يشارك	shared	show يعرض	showed
perform يعزف/يؤدي	performed	do يفعل	did
love يحب	loved	think يعتقد	thought
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	sing يغني	sang
remember يتذكر	remembered	bring يُحضِر	brought
		write يكتب	wrote
		forget ينسى	forgot

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

Next week	الأسبوع المقبل	on weekends	في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع
That sounds fun!	يبدو ذلك ممتعًا!	in the park	في الحديقة
make us special	يجعلنا مميزين	count as	يعتبر كـ
bring ... to life	يجعل ... ينبض بالحياة	Hobby Talent Show class	حصة عرض المواهب والهوايات

Definitions

تعريفات

talent موهبة	a natural skill	مهارة طبيعية
crafting تصنيع/تصميم	making something with your hands	صنع شيء ما بيدك
cycling ركوب الدراجات	riding a bicycle	قيادة الدراجة
singing الغناء	using your voice for music	استخدام صوتك مع الموسيقى
solving puzzles حل الألغاز	a game where you join pieces together	لعبة تقوم فيها بتجميع القطع مع بعضها البعض

**(Conversation) main points** النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة

- The teacher announces a "Hobby Talent Show class" next week.
يعلن المعلم عن تنظيم «حصة عرض المواهب والهوايات» الأسبوع المقبل.
- Maya will show her drawing, painting, and bring a picture of her cycling and skating.
ستعرض مايا رسمتها، لوحتها، ستحضر صورة لها أثناء ركوب الدراجة والتزلج.
- Adam will play the piano, sing, and share his hobbies: playing board games and solving puzzles.
سيغزف آدم على البيانو، سيغني، ويشارك هواياته: لعب ألعاب الطاولة وحل الألغاز.
- Nour's favorite hobby is writing stories and journals.
هواية نور المفضلة هي كتابة القصص والمدونات.
- The teacher reminds them that hobbies make them special.
يذكّرهم المعلم بأن الهوايات تجعلهم مميزين.

Conversation**Read and notice:**

اقرأ ولاحظ:

**Teacher**

1 Next week we'll have a "Hobby Talent Show class". Who wants to share their hobby?

الأسبوع المقبل سيكون لدينا «حصة عرض المواهب والهوايات». من يريد مشاركة هوايته؟

2 Me! I'll show my drawing and painting. I can also do some crafting with paper.

أنا! سأعرض رسمتي ولوحتي. يمكنني أيضًا تصميم الأشياء من الورق.

**Maya****Adam**

3 That sounds fun! I think I'll perform by playing the piano and singing a song.

يبدو ذلك ممتعًا! أعتقد أنني سأؤدي عرضًا بالعزف على البيانو وغناء أغنية.

4 On weekends, I love cycling and skating in the park. Maybe I can bring a picture of that.

في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع، أحب ركوب الدراجات والتزلج في الحديقة. ربما أستطيع إحضار صورة لذلك.





- 5 I enjoy solving puzzles and playing board games with my family. Could that count as a hobby?

أنا أستمتع بحل الألغاز ولعب ألعاب الطاولة مع عائلتي. هل يمكن أن يعتبر ذلك هواية؟

6

- Story writing is my hobby. I sometimes write stories or journals.

كتابة القصص هي هوايتي. أكتب أحيانًا قصصًا أو مدونات.



Nour



- 7 Don't forget coloring – we love it! This talent show will be amazing!

لا تنسوا التلوين – نحن نحبه! سيكون عرض المواهب هذا مذهلاً!

8

- Wonderful choices, everyone! Remember, hobbies make us special. Next week, bring your hobby to life and share your joy with the class!

اختيارات رائعة، جميعًا! تذكروا، الهوايات تجعلنا مميزين. الأسبوع المقبل، اجعلوا هواياتكم تنبض بالحياة وشاركوا مرحكم مع الصف!



Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- | | |
|---|-----|
| 1 Maya will show her drawing and painting in the talent show. | () |
| 2 Adam will perform by playing the piano and singing. | () |
| 3 Nour's hobby is collecting stamps. | () |
| 4 Maya enjoys cycling and skating on weekends. | () |
| 5 Adam never plays board games with his family. | () |
| 6 The teacher says hobbies make students special. | () |
| 7 Maya says she hates coloring. | () |

Answers:

1. (✓)
5. (X)

2. (✓)
6. (✓)

3. (X)
7. (X)

4. (✓)

1  Listen and write (T) True or (F) False: استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:



- 1 The school will hold the talent competition next month. ()
- 2 Yara will perform by drawing and doing some crafting. ()
- 3 Hazem plans to dance in the competition. ()
- 4 The teacher encourages students to share their hobbies. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The students shared their favorite during the class activities.
a. hobby b. city c. month d. paper
- 2 Jana showed a beautiful of a tree that she made with pencils.
a. poem b. drawing c. song d. toy
- 3 The children enjoyed paper flowers during the art lesson.
a. driving b. crafting c. washing d. reading
- 4 Samy will a song at the school talent show.
a. close b. forget c. perform d. borrow
- 5 On weekends, Maha enjoys in the park with her friends.
a. cycling b. baking c. sleeping d. fishing
- 6 Our different hobbies make us and show who we are.
a. late b. special c. hungry d. tired
- 7 She drew a picture that everyone liked.
a. bad b. cold c. wonderful d. slow
- 8 Ziad showed great when he sang and played the piano.
a. problem b. talent c. club d. mistake

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

paintings – hobbies – perform – stories – wonderful

Next week, our class will have a talent show. Amal will share her ⁽¹⁾, and Maged will ⁽²⁾ by playing the piano. Azza will read some of her ⁽³⁾ to the class. The teacher says these ⁽⁴⁾ help students show their skills and enjoy their special talents. Everyone feels excited about the event.

2 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جُملاً:

1 their – Who – to – hobby? – wants – share

2 some – I – do – paper. – crafting – can – with

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 Where does maya like to cycle and skate

2 adam wants to play board games

4 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

“Your hobby”

(talent – free time – wonderful)

Lesson 2

Hobbies Matter

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

hobbies	هوايات	activities	أنشطة	free time	وقت الفراغ
schoolwork	واجب مدرسي	things	أشياء	idea	فكرة
teamwork	عمل جماعي	problem-solving	حل المشكلات	patience	صبر
creativity	إبداع	people	الناس	children	الأطفال
quickly	بسرعة	pieces	قطّع	outside	بالخارج

Adjectives الصفات

energetic	نشط	younger	أصغر سنًا	few	قليل
main	رئيسي/أساسي	simple	بسيط	fun	ممتع/مسلٍ
smarter	أكثر ذكاء	happier	أكثر سعادة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
help يساعد	helped	grow ينمو	grew
relax يسترخي	relaxed	draw يرسم	drew
solve يحل	solved	spend يقضي	spent
learn يتعلّم	learned	run يجري	ran
practice يمارس/يتدرب	practiced	choose يختار	chose
paint يلوّن	painted		
finish يُنهي	finished		
place يضع	placed		
fish يصطاد	fished		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

have fun	يستمتع	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
For example,	على سبيل المثال،	go cycling	يذهب لركوب الدراجات
stay strong	يظل قويًا	do ... well	يؤدي ... بشكل جيد
In the past,	في الماضي،	skills for life	مهارات حياتية



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Hobbies Really Count!

الهوايات مهمة حقاً!



Hobbies are the activities we love to do in our free time. They are not schoolwork, but things that bring us joy. Hobbies are important because they help us relax, have fun, and stay healthy. For example, when people play board games or solve puzzles, they learn teamwork and problem-solving. When they sing or play the piano, they practice patience and creativity. When they go cycling or skating, they stay strong and energetic. Hobbies also show how people grow. Many children can draw, paint, or write stories now, but when they were younger, they couldn't do these activities well. Some people can finish puzzles quickly today, but before they could only place a few pieces. In the past, children could spend more time outside running, skating, or fishing. Today, we can choose from many hobbies that help us learn skills for life. The main idea is simple: hobbies are not only fun they make us smarter, stronger, and happier.

الهوايات هي الأنشطة التي نحب القيام بها في وقت فراغنا. إنها ليست واجباً مدرسياً، بل أشياء تجلب لنا المرح. الهوايات مهمة لأنها تساعدنا على أن نسترخي، نستمتع، ونبقى بصحة جيدة. على سبيل المثال، عندما يلعب الناس ألعاب الطاولة أو يحلون الألغاز، فإنهم يتعلمون العمل الجماعي وحل المشكلات. عندما يغنون أو يعزفون على البيانو، إنهم يتدربون على الصبر والإبداع. عندما يذهبون لركوب الدراجات أو التزلج، فإنهم يظلون أقوياء ونشطاء. تُظهر الهوايات أيضاً كيف ينمو الناس. يمكن للعديد من الأطفال الآن الرسم، التلوين، أو كتابة القصص. لكن عندما كانوا أصغر سناً، لم يتمكنوا من أداء هذه الأنشطة بشكل جيد. يمكن لبعض الناس اليوم إنهاء الألغاز بسرعة، لكن في السابق لم يكونوا قادرين إلا على وضع بعض القطع القليلة. في الماضي، كان بإمكان الأطفال قضاء المزيد من الوقت بالخارج في الجري، التزلج، أو صيد السمك. اليوم، يمكننا الاختيار من بين العديد من الهوايات التي تساعدنا على تعلم مهارات حياتية. الفكرة الرئيسية بسيطة: الهوايات ليست ممتعة فحسب، بل تجعلنا أكثر ذكاءً، قوةً، وسعادةً.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Students should finish their before playing games.
a. schoolwork b. teamwork c. holiday d. rainbow
- 2 Solving long puzzles needs a lot of
a. noise b. patience c. danger d. anger
- 3 The children felt after playing in the garden. They wanted to play more.
a. smart b. energetic c. silent d. bored
- 4 You must place 25 to solve this puzzle.
a. pieces b. songs c. clouds d. bottles

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

puzzles – energetic – creativity – relax – paint

Hobbies are activities that people enjoy in their free time. They help them
 (1) and have fun. When children draw or paint, they use their
 (2) When they go cycling or skating, they stay strong and
 (3) Some people who finish (4) quickly today
 could only solve a few pieces when they were younger.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 Why do hobbies make people happy?
.....
- 2 What skills can people learn from hobbies like drawing or puzzles?
.....
- 3 How were children's hobbies in the past different from today's hobbies?
.....



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Expressing Ability التعبير عن القدرة

I. Present Ability – can القدرة في المضارع

Usage الاستخدام

- We use “can” to show what someone is able to do now.
- نستخدم “can” بمعنى «يستطيع» لإظهار ما يستطيع شخص ما فعله الآن.

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات



Subject + **can** + base verb (الفعل الأساسي) ...

Ex: – She **can** play the piano.



– He **can** finish puzzles quickly.



Negative النفي



Subject + **cannot (can't)** + base verb (الفعل الأساسي) ...

Ex: – They **can't** skate.



– He **can't** ride a bike.



Note

- To express ability in the present, we can use “**am/is/are + able to**” instead of “**can**”.
- للتعبير عن المقدرة في المضارع يمكننا استخدام “am/is/are + able to” بدلاً من “can”.

can = am/is/are + able to + base verb ...

Ex: – She **can/is able to** draw beautiful pictures.

**2. Past Ability – could****القدرة في الماضي****Usage****الاستخدام**

- We use “could” to show what someone was able to do in the past.
- نستخدم “could” بمعنى «استطاع» لإظهار ما كان شخص ما قادرًا على فعله في الماضي.

Form**التكوين****Affirmative****الإثبات**

Subject + **could** + base verb (الفعل الأساسي) ...

Ex: – I **could** read stories when I was six.



– They **could** play tennis at the age of eight.

**Negative****النفي**

Subject + **could not (couldn't)** + base verb (الفعل الأساسي) ...

Ex: – She **couldn't** draw when she was younger.



– He **couldn't** swim when he was six.

**Note**

- To express ability in the past, we can use “**was/were + able to**” instead of “**could**”.
- للتعبير عن المقدرة في الماضي يمكننا استخدام “**was/were + able to**” بدلًا من “**could**”.

could = was/were + able to + base verb ...

Ex: – She **could/was able to** cook when she was a child.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 When I was five, I tie my shoes by myself.
a. can b. can't c. could d. shouldn't
- 2 She speak three languages. She is amazing.
a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't
- 3 He tried to open the jar, but he
a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't
- 4 My sister ride a bike, but she's still learning.
a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't
- 5 We couldn't the teacher clearly because the class was noisy.
a. heard b. hears c. hearing d. hear
- 6 I to help you with your homework after lunch.
a. could b. am able c. couldn't d. can
- 7 She can well. She makes delicious pasta.
a. cook b. cooks c. cooked d. cooking
- 8 She finish the puzzle quickly because it was very easy.
a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 I (can) ride a bike when I was eight.
- 2 She (not/can) come today because she's sick.
- 3 When he was younger, he (can't) read very well.
- 4 They (could) to finish the schoolwork on time. They're clever.
- 5 He (can) play the piano when he was five.
- 6 I could run fast when I was young, but now I (couldn't).
- 7 She (able to) lift the heavy box by herself.
- 8 After training a lot, she was (can) win the race.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hobbies are activities we enjoy in our free time. They are not schoolwork, but they bring us joy and help us relax, have fun, and stay healthy. Hobbies also teach skills like teamwork, patience, and creativity. For example, playing board games, solving puzzles, singing, or cycling can make us stronger and smarter. Over time, children improve their hobbies. Today, there are many hobbies that help us grow, learn, and be happier.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Hobbies are activities we enjoy in our
 a. free time b. school c. work d. holidays
- 2 The opposite of the underlined word "stronger" is
 a. faster b. weaker c. slower d. bigger

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 Why are hobbies important?

.....

- 4 Give 3 examples of hobbies mentioned in the text.

.....

- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 They (can't) fix the car yesterday.
- 2 Omar can (played) board games easily.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- what hobbies could you do in the past

.....



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

group	مجموعة	students	تلاميذ/طلاب	Hobby Club	نادي الهوايات
arrangement	ترتيب	each	كل	paintings	رسومات/لوحات
friendship	صداقة	basketball	كرة السلة	excitement	حماس
others	الآخرون	reading corner	ركن القراءة	classmates	زملاء الفصل
finally	أخيرًا	garden	حديقة	enjoyment	متعة
plants	نباتات	problem	مشكلة	everyone	الجميع/كل شخص
discussion	مناقشة	agreement	اتفاق	solution	حل
soon	قريبًا/سرعان	place	مكان	leadership	قيادة

Adjectives الصفات

special	خاص/مميز	beautiful	جميل	quick	سريع
---------	----------	-----------	------	-------	------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
decide يقرر	decided	teach يُعلِّم	taught
start يبدأ	started	make يجعل	made
join يلتحق/ينضم	joined	meet يقابل	met
organize ينظِّم	organized	become يصبح	became
work يعمل	worked		



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

At our school,	في مدرستنا،	In the art room,	في غرفة الرسم،
grew stronger	نمى/أصبح أكثر قوة	side by side	جنبًا إلى جنب
On the playground,	في الملعب،	In the library,	في المكتبة،
caring for	العناية بـ	At first,	في البداية،
at the same time	في الوقت نفسه	its own day	يومه الخاص

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The School Hobby Club نادي الهوايات المدرسي

At our school, a group of students decided to start a Hobby Club. The arrangement was simple: each student would share a special talent. In the art room, Sara showed her beautiful paintings. Her friendship with Maya grew stronger as they painted side by side. On the playground, Omar taught



basketball skills, and his excitement made others want to join. In the library, Laila organized a reading corner. Her love for reading made her classmates want to read more. Finally, Kareem started a small garden, teaching the enjoyment of caring for plants. At first, the problem was that everyone wanted to meet at the same time. After a quick discussion, they had an agreement: each hobby would have its own day. The solution worked, and soon the Hobby Club became a place of leadership, creativity, and fun.

في مدرستنا، قرّرت مجموعة من التلاميذ أن يبدؤوا ناديًا للهوايات. كان الترتيب بسيطًا: سيشارك كل تلميذ بموهبة مميزة. في غرفة الرسم، عرضت سارة لوحاتها الجميلة. أصبحت صداقتها مع مايا أكثر قوة بينما كانتا ترسمان جنبًا إلى جنب. في الملعب، قام عُمر بتعليم مهارات كرة السلة، وحماسه جعل الآخرين يرغبون في الانضمام. في المكتبة، نظّمت ليلي ركنًا للقراءة. حبها للقراءة جعل زملاء فصلها يرغبون في القراءة أكثر. أخيرًا، أنشأ كريم حديقة صغيرة، يُعلّم فيها متعة العناية بالنباتات. في البداية، كانت المشكلة أن الجميع أرادوا أن يجتمعوا في الوقت نفسه. بعد مناقشة سريعة، توصلوا إلى اتفاق: كل هواية سيكون لها يومها الخاص. نجح الحل، وسرعان ما أصبح نادي الهوايات مكانًا للقيادة، الإبداع، والمرح.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 My and I worked together on a school project.
a. neighbors b. classmates c. tourists d. drivers
- 2 We had a long about how to improve our school garden.
a. discussion b. mistake c. journey d. talent
- 3 The team found a smart to the difficult problem.
a. house b. life c. holiday d. solution
- 4 Many students want to the art club this year.
a. fix b. join c. live d. paint

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

organize – practice – garden – agreement – share

At our school, students worked together to start a Hobby Club. Amina loved to ⁽¹⁾ her art skills, while Malek helped others ⁽²⁾ basketball on the playground. In the library, Samia tried to ⁽³⁾ a small reading corner for her classmates. Yassin planted flowers to create a school ⁽⁴⁾ that everyone enjoyed.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 Why did the students start a Hobby Club?
.....
- 2 What made students want to join Omar's basketball group?
.....
- 3 How did they solve the meeting-time problem?
.....

B Word Building Skills

 Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:



A **suffix** is a group of letters added to the **end of a word** to change its meaning or make a new word.
 اللاحقة: هي مجموعة من الحروف تضاف إلى نهاية الكلمة لتغيير معناها أو لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

The suffix **-ment** اللاحقة **-ment**

The suffix **-ment** changes the verb into a noun.

اللاحقة **-ment** تحول الفعل إلى اسم.

Words with the suffix **"-ment"** كلمات بها اللاحقة **"-ment"**

enjoy ment	متعة	agreement	اتفاق
excite ment	إثارة	argument	جدال
move ment	حركة		

The suffix **-ship** اللاحقة **-ship**

The suffix **-ship** changes the noun into another noun.

اللاحقة **-ship** تحول الاسم إلى اسم آخر.

Words with the suffix **"-ship"** كلمات بها اللاحقة **"-ship"**

friend ship	صداقة	members hip	عضوية
leaders hip	قيادة		

Pronunciation of **-ment** and **-ship**

قاعدة نطق اللاحقتين **-ment** و **-ship**

Suffix **-ment**

- Stress stays on the main word, not on **-ment**.

يظل التشديد على الكلمة الرئيسية، وليس على **-ment**.

en-JOY-ment ✓ (not en-joy-MENT ✗)

● ● ● ● ● ● ● ●

Suffix **-ship**

- Stress stays on the main word, not on **-ship**.

يظل التشديد على الكلمة الرئيسية، وليس على **-ship**.

FRIEND-ship ✓ (not friend-SHIP ✗)

● ● ● ● ● ● ● ●

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last month, our school started a "Healthy Living Week" to help students learn good habits. Each day focused on a new activity. On Monday, teachers guided morning exercises, and students felt more energetic. On Tuesday, the science lab had a workshop about balanced meals. Many students were surprised to learn how different foods help the body. On Wednesday, a doctor visited the school and explained the importance of sleep. By the end of the week, everyone felt more aware of how to stay healthy and active.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The "Healthy Living Week" helped the students learn
 a. homework b. good habits c. more games d. new places
- 2 The underlined word "energetic" means ".....".
 a. tired b. slow c. shy d. active

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What activities did they do on Monday?

.....

- 4 Why were many students surprised during the workshop?

.....

- 5 What is the main idea of the text?

.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 My (friend) with my classmates grows stronger during the trip.
- 2 We discussed and had an (agree).

Steps to Start a Hobby/ Think and Create: A Survey

 Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة

steps	خطوات	truly	حقًا	music	موسيقى
art	فن	nature	الطبيعة	interests	اهتمامات
instrument	آلة موسيقية	keyboard	الأورج (آلة موسيقية)	guitar	الجيتار
gardening	زراعة الحدائق	seeds	بذور	soil	تربة
pot	وعاء/إناء	immediately	على الفور	progress	تقدم
comics	قصص مصورة	video games	ألعاب الفيديو	movies	أفلام
cartoons	أفلام الكرتون	drums	الطبول	models	نماذج
cooking	الطبخ	baking	الخَبز	stamps	الطوابع
cards	البطاقات	collecting items	جمع الأشياء	rarely	نادرًا
alone	بمفرده	whenever	في أي وقت	outdoors	في الخارج

Adjectives

الصفات

new	جديد	great	عظيم/رائع	easy	سهل
happy	سعيد	perfect	كامل/مثالي	single	واحد/وحيد
growing	متزايد/متنام	musical	موسيقي		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
مضارع	ماضي	مضارع	ماضي
try	tried	build	built
follow	followed	get	got
match	matched	begin	began
need	needed	see	saw
plant	planted		
achieve	achieved		



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

something exciting	شيء مثير	take a moment	يأخذ لحظة
in your free time	في وقت فراغك	think about	يفكر في
it's time to	حان الوقت لـ	decide on	يقرر
take time	يأخذ وقتًا	step by step	خطوة بخطوة
make it even better	يجعله أفضل	special class	فصل مميز
in the future	في المستقبل	get better	يتحسن
feel proud	يشعر بالفخر		



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Do you want to try something exciting and new? Starting a great hobby is easy! It brings you enjoyment and helps build strong friendship with others. Follow these four simple steps: First, take a moment to think about what you truly love.



What makes you happy in your free time? Do you like music, art, nature, or movement? Choose a hobby that matches your interests, like drawing, reading, or cycling. Next, it's time to get the things you need to begin. If you decide on music, you might need an instrument like a small keyboard or guitar. If you choose gardening, you will need seeds, soil, and a small pot. Then, start practicing your new hobby! Don't try to be perfect immediately; learning takes time. Play simple songs at first, or plant a small seed in a single pot. After that, practice your hobby step by step to see your amazing progress. Finally, enjoy what you achieved! Show your music to your family, or share a picture of your growing plant with a friend. Hobbies make life exciting and fun, and sharing your excitement makes it even better!

هل تريد تجربة شيء مثير وجديد؟ إن البدء بهواية رائعة أمر سهل! فهي تجلب لك المتعة وتساعدك على بناء صداقة قوية مع الآخرين. اتبع هذه الخطوات الأربع البسيطة: أولاً، خذ لحظة للتفكير فيما تحب حقاً. ما الذي يجعلك سعيداً في وقت فراغك؟ هل تحب الموسيقى، الفن، الطبيعة، أو الحركة؟ اختر هواية تتناسب مع اهتماماتك، مثل الرسم، أو القراءة، أو ركوب الدراجات. بعد ذلك، حان الوقت للحصول على الأشياء التي تحتاجها للبدء. إذا قررت ممارسة الموسيقى، فقد تحتاج إلى آلة موسيقية مثل آلة الأورج صغيرة أو جيتار. إذا اخترت زراعة الحدايق، ستحتاج إلى بذور، تربة، ووعاء صغير. ثم ابدأ في ممارسة هوايتك الجديدة! لا تحاول أن تكون مثالياً على الفور؛ فالتعلم يستغرق وقتاً. اعزف أغاني بسيطة في البداية، أو ازرع بذرة صغيرة في وعاء واحد. بعد ذلك، مارس هوايتك خطوة بخطوة لترى تقدّمك المذهل. أخيراً، استمتع بما حققته! اعرض موسيقاك على عائلتك، أو شارك صورة لنباتك المتنامي مع صديق. الهوايات تجعل الحياة مثيرة وممتعة، ومشاركة حماسك يجعلها أفضل!



Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for writing steps to start a hobby

نصائح لكتابة خطوات لبدء هواية



- Choose a title. اختر عنوانًا.
Ex: – My new hobby
- Choose a hobby you like. اختر الهواية التي تحبها.
Ex: – drawing, football, reading, cycling
- Think about the steps you take to start this hobby. فكر في الخطوات التي تتخذها لبدء هذه الهواية.
Ex: a. Get the instrument / tools you need
b. Begin practicing
c. Enjoy the hobby
- Use sequencing words to show the order. استخدم كلمات التسلسل لإظهار الترتيب.
Ex: – First, Then etc...



Remember

- **Sequencing words** help us show the order of steps or events in text. They tell the reader what happens first, what comes next and what happens at the end.
كلمات التسلسل تساعدنا على إظهار ترتيب الخطوات أو الأحداث في النص. فهي تخبر القارئ بما يحدث أولاً، وما يلي ذلك، وما يحدث في النهاية.
- First,** → use it for the beginning step. أولاً، ← استخدمها للخطوة الأولى.
Ex: – First, think about what you enjoy doing
- Next,** → use it for the second step. التالي، ← استخدمها للخطوة الثانية.
Ex: – Next, choose a hobby that matches your interests
- Then,** → use it for the mid steps. ثم، ← استخدمها للخطوات المتوسطة.
Ex: – Then, collect the things you need for your hobby
- After that,** → use it for more mid steps. بعد ذلك، ← استخدمها لمزيد من الخطوات المتوسطة.
Ex: – After that, practice your hobby step by step
- Finally,** → use it for the last step. أخيرًا، ← استخدمها للخطوة الأخيرة.
Ex: – Finally, share your hobby with your family or friends



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

- A **survey** is a group of questions that people answer to share their ideas, opinions, or experiences.
- الاستبيان هو مجموعة من الأسئلة التي يجيب عنها الأشخاص لمشاركة أفكارهم أو آرائهم أو تجاربهم.

My Hobbies Survey استبيان عن هواياتي**1. Which of these hobbies do you enjoy the most? (Check all that you like)**

- ☐ Reading stories or comics
- ☐ Playing sports (football, basketball, swimming, etc.)
- ☐ Drawing or painting
- ☐ Playing video games
- ☐ Watching movies or cartoons
- ☐ Playing a musical instrument (piano, guitar, drums, etc.)
- ☐ Singing
- ☐ Building things (crafts, puzzles, models)
- ☐ Gardening or taking care of plants
- ☐ Cooking or baking
- ☐ Collecting items (stamps, cards, toys, etc.)
- ☐ Other:

2. How often do you spend time on your favorite hobby?

- ☐ Every day
- ☐ A few times a week
- ☐ Only on weekends
- ☐ Rarely

3. Do you prefer hobbies that you do:

- ☐ Alone
- ☐ With friends
- ☐ With family

**4. When do you usually perform your hobbies?**

- ☐ After school
- ☐ On weekends
- ☐ During holidays
- ☐ Whenever I have free time

5. Where do you usually perform your hobbies?

- ☐ At home
- ☐ Outdoors/in the park
- ☐ At school
- ☐ At a club or special class

6. Which hobby would you like to learn or try in the future?

.....

.....

.....

7. Check all that you like about your hobby.

- ☐ It helps me relax
- ☐ It makes me happy
- ☐ I can do it with friends or family
- ☐ I get better with practice
- ☐ It makes me feel proud

Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for doing a survey

نصائح لإجراء استبيان



- Read each question carefully. اقرأ كل سؤال بعناية.
- Put a ✓ next to your choices in the checkboxes. ضع علامة ✓ بجانب اختياراتك في مربعات الاختيار.
- If the question asks you to circle a number, circle the one that shows how much you enjoy it. إذا طلب منك السؤال وضع دائرة حول عدد، فضع دائرة حول العدد الذي يوضح مدى استمتاعك به.
- If you see a blank line, write your own answer. إذا رأيت سطرًا فارغًا، فاكتب إجابتك الخاصة.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 People have different such as reading, sports, and music.
a. interests b. places c. glasses d. problems
- 2 Sally plays a musical called the violin.
a. tool b. instrument c. insect d. song
- 3 The teacher was happy with the students' in reading.
a. piece b. progress c. story d. mistake
- 4 The children played because the weather was nice.
a. indoors b. outdoors c. upstairs d. below

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

choose – practice – instrument – hobby – share

Starting a new hobby is easy and exciting. First, you should ⁽¹⁾ something you truly enjoy, like music or art. Then, get the tools you need, such as an ⁽²⁾ if you want to play music. After that, ⁽³⁾ your hobby step by step until you improve. Finally, enjoy what you learn and ⁽⁴⁾ your progress with family or friends.

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات بالترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

1 a hobby – Choose – your – that – interests. – matches

2 music – Do – like – or – you – movement?

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- do you want to try something exciting and new

5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

“Starting a new hobby”
(enjoy – practice – progress)

Vocabulary

painting	الرسم	singing	الغناء	solving puzzles	حل الألغاز
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	skating	التزلج	free time	وقت الفراغ
hobbies	هوايات	activities	أنشطة	creativity	إبداع
schoolwork	واجب مدرسي	problem-solving	حل المشكلات	patience	صبر
arrangement	ترتيب	friendship	صداقة	excitement	حماس
enjoyment	متعة	leadership	قيادة	membership	عضوية
steps	خطوات	instrument	آلة موسيقية	interests	اهتمامات
seeds	بذور	comics	قصص مصورة	models	نماذج
playing board games	لعب ألعاب الطاولة	playing the piano	العزف على البيانو	crafting with paper	التصميم بالورق

Language

Expressing Ability

1. Present Ability – can

- We use “can” to show what someone is able to do now.

• نستخدم “can” بمعنى «يستطيع» لإظهار ما يستطيع شخص ما فعله الآن.

Affirmative



Subject + **can** + base verb ...

Ex: – She **can** play the piano.

Negative



Subject + **cannot (can't)** + base verb ...

Ex: – They **can't** skate.

2. Past Ability – could

- We use “could” to show what someone was able to do in the past.

• نستخدم “could” بمعنى «استطاع» لإظهار ما كان شخص ما قادرًا على فعله في الماضي.

Affirmative



Subject + **could** + base verb ...

Ex: – I **could** read stories when I was six.

Negative



Subject + **could not (couldn't)** + base verb ...

Ex: – She **couldn't** draw when she was younger.



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1

Show Your Talent

- The class will have a "Hobby Talent Show Class" next week, and students will share their hobbies. سيقوم الفصل "حصة عرض المواهب والهوايات" الأسبوع المقبل، وسيشارك التلاميذ هواياتهم.
- Maya enjoys drawing, painting, crafting with paper, and sometimes cycling and skating. تستمتع مايا بالرسم، التلوين، والتصميم بالورق، وأحياناً ركوب الدراجات والتزلج.
- Adam will play the piano and sing. He also likes solving puzzles and playing board games. سيعزف آدم على البيانو ويغني. كما أنه يحب حل الألغاز ولعب ألعاب الطاولة.
- Nour's hobby is writing stories and journals. هواية نور هي كتابة القصص والمدونات.
- The teacher reminds the students that hobbies make everyone special. يذكر المعلم التلاميذ بأن الهوايات تجعل كل شخص مميزاً.

Lesson 2

Hobbies Matter

- Hobbies are fun activities we do in our free time. الهوايات هي أنشطة ممتعة نقوم بها في وقت فراغنا.
- They help us relax, enjoy ourselves, and stay healthy. إنها تساعدنا على الاسترخاء والاستمتاع، والبقاء بصحة جيدة.
- Games, puzzles, and music help us learn new skills. تساعدنا الألعاب، الألغاز، والموسيقى على تعلّم مهارات جديدة.
- Cycling and skating make us active and strong. ركوب الدراجات والتزلج يجعلنا نشيطين وأقوياء.
- Hobbies help us grow and become smarter and happier. تساعدنا الهوايات على النمو ونصبح أكثر ذكاءً وسعادة.

Lessons 4&5 Steps to Start a Hobby/Think and Create: A Survey

- Starting a hobby is easy and brings fun and new friendships. بدء ممارسة هواية أمر سهل ويجلب المتعة والصداقات الجديدة.
- First, think about what you enjoy, like music, art, nature, or movement. أولاً، فكّر فيما تستمتع به، مثل الموسيقى، الفن، الطبيعة، أو الحركة.
- Next, choose a hobby you like and get the tools you need, such as an instrument or seeds. بعد ذلك، اختر هواية تحبها واحصل على الأدوات التي تحتاجها، مثل آلة موسيقية أو بذور.
- Then, begin practicing slowly and improve step by step. ثم، ابدأ بالتدريب ببطء وتحسّن خطوة بخطوة.
- Finally, enjoy your progress and share your hobby with others. أخيراً، استمتع بتقدّمك وشارك هوايتك مع الآخرين.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

ركوب الدراجات	لعب ألعاب الطاولة
الرسم	التزلج
حل الألغاز	الغناء
التصميم بالورق	العزف على البيانو
قصص	صورة
متعة/مرح	اختيارات
رائع	مُذهل

Lesson (2)

واجب مدرسي	هوايات
وقت الفراغ	أنشطة
حل المشكلات	عمل جماعي
فكرة	صبر
نشط	إبداع
بسيط	أساسي/رئيسي

Lesson (3)

ترتيب	مجموعة
صداقة	رسومات/لوحات
حماس	كرة السلة
مشكلة	نباتات
مناقشة	حل
سريع	خاص/مميز
اتفاق	مكان

Lessons (4&5)

الطبيعة	خطوات
البطاقات	آلة موسيقية
واحد/وحيد	الطوايع



Conjugation of Verbs

Present

Past

Present

Past

want

wanted

share

write

wrote

help

perform

relax

love

solve

enjoy

learn

count

practice

remember

paint

has/have

finish

show

spend

do

organize

fish

become

think

follow

sing

match

bring

achieve



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"My hobby"

1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below. فكر في كلمات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصرّفها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. hobby 2. drawing 3. pencils

Verbs

1. start 2. love 3. bought

Others

1. new 2. some 3. every day

2 Form your sentences.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكملة الجملة)

1. I want to start a new hobby.
2. I love drawing and painting.
3. I bought some pencils and colors.
4. I practice every day and enjoy it.

3 Write your paragraph.

اكتب فقرتك.

I started a new hobby. I love drawing and painting. So, I started watching videos to learn more about drawings. I also searched online for some information. After that, I bought some pencils and colors. I practiced every day and enjoyed it a lot. I drew many beautiful pictures.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"Your school hobby show"

Nouns

1. 2. 3.

Verbs

1. 2. 3.

Others

1. 2. 3.

Your sentences
1.
2.
3.
4.

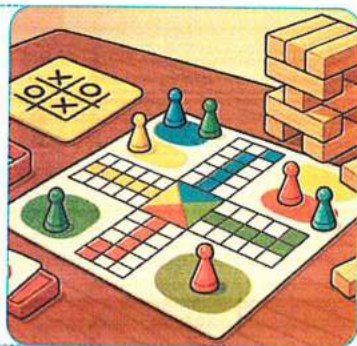
Your paragraph فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

My hobbies

I like to do many hobbies in my free time. I enjoy playing board games with my family and friends. I also like cycling in the park on sunny days. Solving puzzles is fun and makes me think. These hobbies make me happy.



Hobbies are important

Hobbies are activities we enjoy in our free time. They help us relax. Playing board games, solving puzzles, painting, or cycling are all fun and help us learn skills. Hobbies also make us strong, happy, and smarter as we grow.



Our School Hobby Club

At our school, students started a Hobby Club. We painted pictures, organized a reading corner, and played basketball. At first, everyone wanted to meet together. Then, we agreed to have a different day for each hobby. The club became fun and creative.



Starting a new hobby

Everyone needs to start a new hobby. Hobbies are fun and help you make friends. First, choose something you like, such as drawing, music, or gardening. Then, get what you need and start practicing. Finally, enjoy and share your progress.





1 Match the word with its meaning. Put the correct number in the box:

Word	Meaning
1 talent	☐ a a game where you join pieces together
2 crafting	☐ b using your voice for music
3 cycling	☐ c a natural skill
4 singing	☐ d making something with your hands
5 solving puzzles	☐ e riding a bicycle

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 I (can / couldn't) ride a bike now.
- 2 She sings very well today, but last year she (can / couldn't) sing clearly.
- 3 We (can / couldn't) play the piano when we were younger; it was hard.
- 4 He (can / couldn't) draw nice pictures today; he is taking lessons.

3 Choose the best answer for each question:

- Which activity involves using brushes and colors to create a picture?
a. cycling b. skating
c. painting d. solving puzzles
- If you are using a keyboard to make music, you are
a. singing b. playing the piano
c. cycling d. skating
- Which hobby is most likely to help you improve your problem-solving skills?
a. painting b. singing c. solving puzzles d. skating
- Which activity is typically done outdoors on a two-wheeled vehicle?
a. playing the piano b. cycling c. singing d. painting
- What do we call using your voice to make music?
a. skating b. cycling c. playing the piano d. singing

Test on unit (1)

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Hobbies are activities we enjoy at school. ()
2. Some people like playing board games or cycling only. ()
3. Hobbies help us become more patient. ()
4. A Hobby Club lets students share their skills. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Farmers plant in the soil to grow new crops.
a. wheels b. seeds c. wires d. stones
2. Omar enjoys reading because they have funny pictures.
a. rules b. comics c. recipes d. puzzles
3. When I was five, I ride a bicycle by myself.
a. can b. am able to c. can't d. couldn't
4. I speak English very well, so I can read stories in English.
a. can b. could c. can't d. couldn't

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****music – relax – puzzles – cycling – board games**

Many students enjoy different hobbies in their free time. Some like puzzles, while others enjoy painting to ⁽¹⁾ and have fun. Some children love ⁽²⁾ in the park, and others enjoy playing ⁽³⁾ with friends at home. Playing an instrument or listening to ⁽⁴⁾ is also a popular hobby for many.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Our school is preparing for the annual Hobby Talent Day. Students from different classes will share their favorite activities. Sara plans to show her colorful drawings. Mona will sing, while Amir will play the piano. Rasha will read a story she wrote about friendship. Both Mazen and Ali will do some crafting with paper. The teacher says this event helps students discover new interests and learn from one another. Many parents will attend to support their children, making the day even more exciting for everyone.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is the school's day.
a. sports b. hobby c. science d. reading
2. The underlined word "their" refers to the
a. parents b. children c. students d. teachers

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What activity will Sara present during Hobby Talent Day?
.....
4. Why does the teacher think the event is helpful for students?
.....
5. What is the story Rasha wrote about?
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. She (could) paint beautiful pictures by herself now.
2. They (can) swim when they were only five.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. your – perform – do – When – you – hobbies? – usually

2. and skating – I – love – in the – cycling – park.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. what makes you happy in your free time
2. i'll perform by playing the piano and singing a song

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“My favorite hobby”

(free time – relax – practice)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Hobbies are things we enjoy in our
 a. free time b. schoolwork c. chores d. homework
2. Hobbies can be activities such as
 a. sleeping b. cycling c. eating d. talking
3. Hobbies help us spend time with
 a. friends b. classmates c. family d. cousins

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

puzzles – hobby – board games – cycling

Sara : Hi Adam! I started a new hobby last week.

Adam : Really? What ⁽¹⁾ did you try?

Sara : I spent time painting and also ⁽²⁾ in the park.

Adam : That sounds fun! Did you play ⁽³⁾ with your friends too?

Sara : Yes, and I solved many ⁽⁴⁾ at home.

(C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Drawing and painting help children show their in class.
 a. creativity b. height c. weather d. noise
2. It is important to complete your before watching TV.
 a. schoolwork b. holiday c. toy d. game
3. When I was little, I climb the tree in our garden.
 a. can b. could c. can't d. am able to
4. I can play the piano, but I play the guitar.
 a. can b. could c. can't d. couldn't



4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

1. I could swam very well when I was seven. (.....)
2. She finds great enjoy in painting. (.....)
3. He can't answer the question. It was too hard. (.....)
4. We are able play basketball well. (.....)

(D) Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Hobbies are fun activities we enjoy in our free time. They help us relax, have fun, and learn new skills. Some children like outdoors hobbies as cycling and skating. Others prefer indoor hobbies such as playing board games, solving puzzles, drawing, painting, or crafting. Hobbies also let us share time with friends and family. They make life more enjoyable and help us grow stronger, smarter, and happier.

(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Hobbies can help you make friends. ()
2. All children enjoy the same hobbies. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

3. Hobbies like cycling or drawing make some children
a. tired b. happy c. bored d. sleepy
4. We enjoy doing hobbies in our
a. busy time b. free time c. bedtime d. daytime
5. Sharing your hobby with family or friends makes life
a. enjoyable b. boring c. difficult d. tiring

(E) Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:

"A day at the art room"
(class – paint – colors – fun)

.....

.....

.....

.....

2

Unit

At the Doctor's

Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Express their opinions and thoughts on health-related topics
- Tell a personal experience or a story related to feeling sick
- Present health tips they have created to their classmates

- التعبير عن آرائهم وأفكارهم حول الموضوعات المتعلقة بالصحة
- حكي تجربة شخصية أو قصة متعلقة بالشعور بالمرض
- تقديم نصائح صحيّة قاموا بابتكارها لزملائهم في الفصل

Listening

- Identify key information and main ideas from a dialog about a visit to a doctor's clinic

تحديد المعلومات الأساسية والأفكار الرئيسية من محادثة عن زيارة إلى عيادة طبيب

- Recall specific details and advice given in a conversation
- Recognize and recall vocabulary related to illnesses and the clinic

تذكر تفاصيل محددة ونصائح قُدمت في محادثة

تعرف وتذكر المفردات المتعلقة بالأمراض والعيادة

Reading

- Understand informational texts
- Extract specific information from a text to answer questions
- Follow written instructions and advice found in a text, such as health rules

فهم نصوص معلوماتية

استخلاص معلومات محددة من نصّ للإجابة عن أسئلة

اتباع تعليمات مكتوبة ونصائح موجودة في نصّ، مثل قواعد الصحة

Writing

- Use "have to, don't have to, must, mustn't" to give advice or talk about obligations

استخدام "have to, don't have to, must, mustn't" لإعطاء نصيحة أو التحدث عن التزامات

- Write a short email including a subject line, greeting, and a brief message

كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني قصيرة تتضمن عنوان الموضوع، التحية، ورسالة مختصرة

- Create short, clear health tips for a bookmark

إنشاء نصائح صحيّة قصيرة، وواضحة لإشارة مرجعية

 Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:



New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة



headache

صداع



sore throat

التهاب في الحلق



fever

حمى (ارتفاع درجة الحرارة)



cough

سعال/كحة



stomachache

ألم المعدة

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

check-up	فحص طبي	body	جسم	ice cream	آيس كريم
a little	قليلاً	pharmacy	صيدلية	medicine	دواء
soon	قريباً	nurse	ممرضة	clinic	عيادة
quickly	سريعاً	warm liquids	سوائل دافئة	examination room	غرفة الفحص

Adjectives الصفات

tired	مُتعب	weak	ضعيف	serious	خطير/جاد
-------	-------	------	------	---------	----------



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
rest يستريح	rested	hurt يؤلم	hurt
love يحب	loved	feel يشعر	felt
hope يتمنى	hoped	drink يشرب	drank
		get يحصل على	got
		take يأخذ	took

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

look well يبدو بصحة جيدة	What's wrong? ما المشكلة؟
Oh no! أوه لا! (تعبير عن الحزن أو الضيق)	have to يجب/ينبغي
how are you feeling ...? كيف تشعر ...؟	Not good, ليس جيدًا،
for three days لمدة ثلاثة أيام	I know. أنا أعرف.
take care of يعتني بـ	feel better يشعر بالتحسن
Thank you, شكرًا لك،	let's go to هيا نذهب إلى



(Conversation) main points النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة



- Fady is tired. He has a headache, a cough, a sore throat, and a fever.
فادي مُتعب. لديه صداع، سعال، التهاب في الحلق، وحمى.
- Fady's mother sees he doesn't look well and says they need to go to the doctor.
تري والدته فادي أنه لا يبدو بصحة جيدة وتقول إنهم بحاجة للذهاب إلى الطبيب.
- At the clinic, the nurse asks Fady to come to the examination room.
في العيادة، تطلب الممرضة من فادي أن يأتي إلى غرفة الفحص.
- The doctor talks to Fady and tells him he must rest and drink warm liquids.
يتحدث الطبيب إلى فادي ويخبره أنه يجب أن يرتاح ويشرب سوائل دافئة.
- Mother takes Fady to the pharmacy to get his medicine. Fady hopes he will get better soon.
تأخذ الأم فادي إلى الصيدلية للحصول على دوائه. يأمل فادي أن يتحسن قريبًا.



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:



Fady

1 Ah... I feel so tired. My body hurts. آه... أشعر أنني مُتعب جدًا. جسمي يؤلمني.

2 You don't look well, Fady. What's wrong? أنت لا تبدو بصحة جيدة، يا فادي. ما المشكلة؟



Mother



3 I have a headache and a cough. I also have a sore throat and a fever. لدي صداع وسعال. لدي أيضًا التهاب في الحلق وحمى.

4 Oh no! We have to go to the doctor. أوه لا! يجب أن نذهب إلى الطبيب.



At the clinic في العيادة



Nurse

5 Hello, Fady. Please come to the examination room. مرحبًا، يا فادي. من فضلك تعال إلى غرفة الفحص.

6 Well, Fady, how are you feeling today? حسنًا، يا فادي، كيف تشعر اليوم؟



Doctor



7 Not good, Doctor. I have a headache and cough. ليس جيدًا، يا دكتور. لدي صداع وسعال.

8 You look a little weak, but it's not serious. You must rest and drink warm liquids. No ice cream for three days. أنت تبدو ضعيفًا قليلًا، لكن الأمر ليس خطيرًا. يجب أن ترتاح وتشرب سوائل دافئة. لا آيس كريم لمدة ثلاثة أيام.



9 Oh no! But I love ice cream! أوه لا! لكنني أحب الآيس كريم!



- 10 I know, but you have to take care of yourself. You'll feel better soon.

أنا أعرف، لكن يجب أن تعتني بنفسك. ستشعر بالتحسن قريبًا.



- 11 Thank you, Doctor. Now, Fady, let's go to the pharmacy to get your medicine.

شكرًا لك يا دكتور. الآن، يا فادي، هيا نذهب إلى الصيدلية لنحصل على دوائك.



- 12 I hope I feel better quickly. I must take my medicine and rest.

أتمنى أن أشعر بالتحسن سريعًا. يجب أن آخذ دوائي وأرتاح.

Tip!

- We use **have/has** to talk about how we feel when we are sick.

• نستخدم **have/has** بمعنى «لديه/يعاني» للتحدث عن كيف نشعر عندما نكون مرضى.

I/You/We/They → **have**

Ex: – I **have** a headache.

He/She/It → **has**

Ex: – He **has** a cough.

Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- | | |
|---|-----|
| 1 Fady has a sore throat. | () |
| 2 Fady and his brother go to the doctor. | () |
| 3 The doctor says that Fady's sickness is serious. | () |
| 4 Fady won't eat ice cream for five days. | () |
| 5 Fady must rest and drink cold liquids. | () |
| 6 Fady and his mother go to the pharmacy to get medicine. | () |

Answers:

1. (✓)
4. (X)

2. (X)
5. (X)

3. (X)
6. (✓)

1  Listen and write (T) True or (F) False: استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:



- 1 Karim didn't feel well in the morning. ()
- 2 The nurse guided Karim to the room at the clinic. ()
- 3 Karim said he had a stomachache and a cough. ()
- 4 Lina went to the pharmacy to get Karim's medicine. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Mariam had a _____, so she didn't eat her lunch.
a. stomachache b. cough c. headache d. fever
- 2 The nurse told Hani that the _____ was ready for his check-up.
a. park b. pharmacy
c. examination room d. street
- 3 After school, Jana _____ on the chair for half an hour.
a. felt b. took c. looked d. rested
- 4 Farida didn't feel well, so her mother took her to the _____ for a quick check-up.
a. garden b. museum c. supermarket d. clinic
- 5 The boy had a bad _____ after running in the cold without a jacket.
a. cough b. nurse c. check-up d. sport
- 6 He drank warm _____ because they would help him feel better.
a. sore throat b. ice cream c. liquids d. fever
- 7 Youssef had to go to the _____ to get the medicine.
a. pharmacy b. bakery c. café d. playground
- 8 The doctor said the problem wasn't _____, so Nader didn't worry.
a. sad b. tired c. weak d. serious

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

fever – weak – care – sore – hurt

Omar woke up early, and he could tell something was wrong. He tried to speak, but his ⁽¹⁾ throat made it difficult. His body ⁽²⁾, so his aunt decided to stay home with him. She didn't want him to feel ⁽³⁾, so she made warm drinks and reminded him to take ⁽⁴⁾ of himself until he felt better.

2 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

1 medicine – I – rest. – must – my – take – and

2 doctor. – go – to – the – have – We – to

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 fady, how are you feeling today

2 please come to the examination room

4 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"Your last visit to a doctor"

(hurt – check-up – medicine)



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

accidents	حوادث	inside	بالداخل	bandages	ضمادات طبية
plasters	لاصقات طبية	scissors	مقص/مقصات	cuts	جروح
bruises	كدمات	student	تلميذ	parents	والدان/آباء

Adjectives الصفات

clean	نظيف	dangerous	خطير	careful	حذر/حريص
ready	جاهز/مستعد	full	ممتلئ	sick	مريض

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
need يحتاج	needed	tell يخبر	told
help يساعد	helped	know يعرف	knew
open يفتح	opened	has يمتلك/لديه	had
call يتصل	called		
check يتأكد/يفحص	checked		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

get hurt	يُصاب بأذى	right away	في الحال/على الفور
without permission	دون إذن	make sure	يتأكد
play safely	يلعب بأمان	remember to	يتذكر أن

Definitions

تعريفات

nurse's room غرفة الممرض/الممرضة	the place where students go when they feel sick at school المكان الذي يذهب إليه التلاميذ عندما يشعرون بالمرض في المدرسة
nurse ممرض/ممرضة	the person who gives you medicine at school الشخص الذي يعطيك دواءً في المدرسة
injured مصاب	hurt or sick محروح أو مريض
first aid kit حقيبة إسعافات أولية	the box in the nurse's room that has everything needed for small accidents الصندوق الموجود في غرفة الممرضة الذي به كل ما يلزم لحوادث صغيرة
safe آمن	protected from harm or danger محمي من الأذى أو الخطر



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The First Aid Kit at School حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية في المدرسة

At our school, there's a big first aid kit in the nurse's room. It has everything we might need for small accidents. Inside, there are bandages, plasters, scissors, and medicine for cuts and bruises. If a student gets hurt, the nurse has to check the first aid kit and help them right away. Students must tell a teacher or the nurse when someone is injured. We mustn't open the first aid kit without permission because some things inside can be dangerous. Nurses must make sure the kit is always clean, ready, and full. They also must call parents if a student feels too sick. Students don't have to worry, because the nurse always knows how to help. The first aid kit helps everyone stay safe at school – but we must all remember to be careful and play safely so we don't get hurt!



في مدرستنا، توجد حقيبة إسعافات أولية كبيرة في غرفة الممرضة. بها كل ما قد نحتاجه للحوادث الصغيرة. بداخلها ضمادات، لاصقات طبية، مقصات، ودواء للجروح والكدمات. إذا أصيب تلميذ بأذى، يجب على الممرضة أن تفحص حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية وتساعد على الفور. يجب على التلاميذ إخبار المعلم أو الممرضة عندما يكون شخص ما مصابًا. لا يجب أن نفتح حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية دون إذن لأن بعض الأشياء بداخلها قد تكون خطيرة. يجب على الممرضات أن يتأكدن من أن الحقيبة دائمًا نظيفة، جاهزة، وممثلة. كما يجب عليهن الاتصال بالآباء إذا شعر أحد التلاميذ بأنه مريض جدًا. التلاميذ غير مضطرين للقلق، لأن الممرضة تعرف دائمًا كيف تساعد. تساعد حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية الجميع على البقاء آمنين في المدرسة – لكن يجب أن نتذكر جميعًا أن نكون حذرين ونلعب بأمان حتى لا نصاب بأذى!

Tryout

Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- 1 There is a small first aid kit in the nurse's room. ()
- 2 The first aid kit has bandages, scissors, and bruises. ()
- 3 When someone is injured, students must tell a teacher or a nurse. ()
- 4 We can open the first aid kit without permission. ()
- 5 Nurses make sure the first aid kit is clean and ready. ()
- 6 Everyone stays safe at school with the help of the first aid kit. ()

Answers:4. (X)
1. (X)5. (✓)
2. (X)6. (✓)
3. (✓)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The boy had two small on his leg after he fell down.
a. bruises b. rooms c. clinics d. kits
- 2 Adam had a cut on his hand. He put two on it.
a. plasters b. scissors c. books d. pens
- 3 A/An is the place where students go when they feel sick at school.
a. garden b. library c. classroom d. nurse's room
- 4 The box has medicine inside, so students must not touch it without
a. home b. fun c. permission d. art

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

bandages – better – injured – bruise – nurse

During break time at school, Mariam saw a young girl crying near a bench. Mariam saw that the girl was ⁽¹⁾ Mariam quickly called the ⁽²⁾ for help. The nurse came with the first aid kit and took out some ⁽³⁾ to cover the girl's small cut. After a few minutes, the girl felt ⁽⁴⁾ and went back to class slowly.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 What are there inside the first aid kit?

.....

- 2 What must students do if someone is injured?

.....

- 3 Why don't students have to worry if they are too sick?

.....



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Talking about Health Rules التحدث عن قواعد الصحة

- We use "have to/don't have to/must /mustn't" to talk about rules or things we should do.
- نستخدم "have to/don't have to/must /mustn't" بمعنى «يجب أن/غير مضطر إلى/يجب/لا يجب» للتحدث عن القواعد أو الأشياء التي ينبغي أن نفعلها.

Have to يجب أن

to talk about something necessary

للتحدث عن شيء ما ضروري



Must يجب

to talk about a very important/strong rule

للتحدث عن قاعدة مهمة/قوية جدًا

Subject + **have to/must** + verb (infinitive) ... (فعل في المصدر)

Ex: – Students **have to** wash their hands.



– You **must** drink water.



Don't have to غير مضطر إلى

to talk about something not necessary

للتحدث عن شيء ما غير ضروري



Mustn't لا يجب

to talk about something not allowed

للتحدث عن شيء ما غير مسموح به

Subject + **don't have to/mustn't** + verb (infinitive) ...

Ex: – We **don't have to** worry about small cuts because the nurse will help us.



– You **mustn't** eat too much candy.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Nora stay up late when she is sick.
a. have to b. mustn't c. has to d. must
- 2 We brush our teeth every day to be healthy.
a. must b. mustn't
c. don't have to d. doesn't have to
- 3 When you cough, you have to your mouth.
a. covered b. covers c. cover d. covering
- 4 I take medicine when the doctor says I am fine.
a. must b. don't have to c. have to d. has to
- 5 We tell the nurse if someone gets hurt.
a. has to b. don't have to c. mustn't d. have to
- 6 Children mustn't too much soda.
a. drink b. drank c. drinks d. drinking
- 7 You to rest when your body feels weak.
a. must b. has c. mustn't d. have
- 8 Students don't read for hours if their eyes feel tired.
a. mustn't b. have c. have to d. must

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 People (mustn't) sleep early to feel well.
- 2 You (have to) carry heavy bags if your back hurts.
- 3 She (must) eat ice cream when she has a sore throat.
- 4 Nader must (ate) healthy food to stay strong.
- 5 Your brothers (must) sit too close to the screen.
- 6 They don't (have) visit the doctor today if they feel better.
- 7 A patient mustn't (touching) a cut with dirty hands.
- 8 I (mustn't) use the first aid kit for a tiny scratch.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

During PE class, a boy fell on the ground and got small cuts on his hand and a bruise on his knee. His friend helped him stand up and called the teacher. The teacher took him to the nurse's room. The nurse washed the cuts gently and checked the bruise to make sure it wasn't serious. Then she used the first aid kit to put clean bandages on his hand. She told him to walk slowly and rest for a little while. After that, the boy felt much better.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The underlined word "nurse" means "the person who gives you at school".
a. food b. liquids c. medicine d. water
- 2 The underlined pronoun "him" refers to the
a. boy b. nurse c. friend d. teacher

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What happened during PE class?

.....

- 4 Why did the nurse use the first aid kit?

.....

- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 He must (saw) the doctor if he feels sick.
- 2 I (don't have to) keep my food covered to stay healthy.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- we mustn't open the first aid kit without permission

.....



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

tests	اختبارات/فحوصات	care	رعاية	teamwork	عمل جماعي
libraries	مكتبات	families	عائلات	child	طفل
studies	دراسات	treatment plan	خطة علاج	children's hospital	مستشفى أطفال

Adjectives الصفات

famous	مشهور	important	مهم	free	مجاني
friendly	ودود	fun	مرح/ممتع	healthy	صحي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
arrive يصل	arrived	pay يدفع	paid
explain يشرح	explained	give يعطي	gave
continue يستمر	continued	show يُظهر	showed

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

not only ... but also	ليس فقط ... بل أيضًا	around the world	حول العالم
check in	يسجل الدخول	full of hope	مليء بالأمل
donate money to	يتبرع بالمال إلى	become strong	يصبح قويًا

In the hospital في المستشفى

receptionist	موظف استقبال	a person who helps children check in when they arrive at the hospital	شخص ما يساعد الأطفال على تسجيل دخولهم عندما يصلون إلى المستشفى
playrooms	غرف لعب	places in the hospital where children can have fun	أماكن في المستشفى حيث يمكن للأطفال الاستمتاع
doctor	دكتور/طبيب	a person who explains the treatment plan to the children	شخص ما يشرح خطة العلاج للأطفال
donations	تبرعات	giving money to help the hospital	إعطاء المال لمساعدة المستشفى



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Hospital 57-3-57: A Place of Hope

مستشفى 57-3-57: مكان الأمل

Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Cairo, Egypt. It is known not only in Egypt but also around the world. The hospital is very big and helps children who are sick. The most important thing is that all treatment is free for the children. Families do not have to pay because many people in Egypt donate money to the hospital. These donations help children get the care they need and give their families hope. When children arrive, a friendly receptionist helps them check in. Then a nurse takes them to the examination room for tests. After the tests, the doctor explains the treatment plan. The hospital also has playrooms, libraries, and other fun places so children can feel happy and safe. Teachers help children continue their studies while they are getting better. Hospital 57-3-57 is full of hope. It shows that donations and teamwork help every child become strong and healthy again.



مستشفى 57-3-57 هو مستشفى أطفال مشهور في القاهرة، في مصر. وهو معروف ليس فقط في مصر ولكن أيضًا في جميع أنحاء العالم. المستشفى كبير جدًا ويساعد الأطفال المرضى. الشيء الأكثر أهمية هو أن كل العلاج مجاني للأطفال. لا تضطر العائلات إلى الدفع لأن الكثير من الناس في مصر يتبرعون بالمال للمستشفى. تساعد هذه التبرعات الأطفال في الحصول على الرعاية التي يحتاجونها وتمنح عائلاتهم الأمل. عند وصول الأطفال، يساعدهم موظف استقبال ودود في تسجيل الدخول. ثم تأخذهم ممرضة إلى غرفة الفحص للفحص. بعد الفحوصات، يشرح الطبيب خطة العلاج. يوجد في المستشفى أيضًا غرف ألعاب، مكتبات، وأماكن ترفيهية أخرى حتى يشعر الأطفال بالسعادة والأمان. يساعد المعلمون الأطفال على مواصلة دراساتهم أثناء تحسينهم. مستشفى 57-3-57 مليء بالأمل. إنه يظهر أن التبرعات والعمل الجماعي يساعدان كل طفل على أن يصبح قويًا وصحيًا مرة أخرى.

Tryout

Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- 1 Hospital 57-3-57 is for elderly people. ()
- 2 Hospital 57-3-57 is in Luxor. ()
- 3 Families don't have to pay because of other people's donations. ()
- 4 The doctor explains the treatment plan. ()

4. (✓)

3. (✓)

2. (X)

1. (X)

Answers:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 are places in the hospital where children can have fun.
 a. Living rooms b. Playrooms c. Kitchens d. Libraries
- 2 The doctor described the so the parents knew how to help their child at home.
 a. treatment plan b. book c. notebook d. board
- 3 The pharmacy gives medicine to families who need help.
 a. tall b. hard c. free d. happy
- 4 Families must at the reception desk before seeing the doctor.
 a. check in b. clean up c. run away d. turn off

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

tests – donate – teamwork – donations – care

Baheya Hospital in Egypt helps people get better. The kind doctors and nurses give ⁽¹⁾ to patients. Doctors do ⁽²⁾ to find the best treatment. The hospital uses ⁽³⁾ from people who want to help to buy medicine. With great ⁽⁴⁾ from everyone, patients become healthy and strong. It is a place full of hope and kindness for all.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 What is Hospital 57-3-57?

- 2 What happens when children arrive at Hospital 57-3-57?

- 3 How can children feel happy and safe at Hospital 57-3-57?

B Word Building Skills



Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر ورّد:

Suffixes -able / -ible

اللاحق -ible / -able

- The suffix **-able / -ible** is added to the end of a word to form an adjective.

تضاف اللاحقة **-able / -ible** إلى نهاية الكلمة لتكوين صفة.

Ex: comfort**able**: able to feel relaxed

مريح: قادر على الشعور بالاسترخاء

cure**able**: able to be cured

قابل للعلاج: يمكن علاجه

access**ible**: easy to reach

سهل الوصول: سهل للوصول إليه

Words with the suffix **"-able"**

الكلمات التي بها اللاحقة **"-able"**



comfort**able**

مريح



cure**able**

قابل للعلاج



read**able**

قابل للقراءة



wash**able**

قابل للغسل

Words with the suffix **"-ible"**

الكلمات التي بها اللاحقة **"-ible"**



access**ible**

سهل الوصول

Pronunciation tips

نصائح للنطق

- The ending **-able** is usually pronounced /əbl/ → com-fort-a-ble, read-a-ble.
عادةً ما تُنطق النهاية **-able** /əbl/ كما في com-fort-a-ble, read-a-ble.
- The ending **-ible** is usually pronounced /ɪbl/ → ac-cess-i-ble, revers-i-ble.
عادةً ما تُنطق النهاية **-ible** /ɪbl/ كما في ac-cess-i-ble, revers-i-ble.
- Stress is usually on the first syllable of the base word: com-fort-able, cure-able.
عادةً ما يكون التشديد على المقطع الأول من الكلمة الأساسية: com-fort-able, cure-able.

Extra Words

كلمات إضافية

The suffix **"-able"**

enjoy**able**

ممتع

break**able**

قابل للكسر

The suffix **"-ible"**

revers**ible**

قابل للانعكاس

vis**ible**

مرئي

terrib**le**

سيئ / رهيب

poss**ible**

ممکن

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Abu El-Rish Children's Hospital in Cairo is one of the most helpful hospitals for young patients in Egypt. Many families go there because the doctors and nurses work hard to care for children who are sick. The hospital has playrooms and fun areas to help children feel calm while they wait. When a child arrives, a receptionist helps the family, and a nurse takes the child for tests. The doctors explain the treatment plan clearly so parents understand everything. The hospital gives hope to many families every day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The underlined word "sick" has the same meaning as ".....".
 a. careful b. strong c. fun d. ill
- 2 The doctors explain the plan to the parents.
 a. hospital b. treatment c. room d. family

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What does the text talk about?

- 4 What does the underlined word "there" refer to?

- 5 How can children feel calm during their wait?

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 The doctors said the illness wasn't serious because it was (cure).
- 2 The museum built a wide door to make it (access) for visitors.

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

sick leave	إجازة مرضية	work	عمل	understanding	فهم
eating	أكل	brain	مخ	healthy habits	عادات صحية
bathroom	حمام	fruits	فواكه	vegetables	خضراوات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
return يعود	returned	come يأتي	came
wash يغسل	washed	write يكتب	wrote
use يستخدم	used	run يجري	ran
exercise يتدرب	exercised	keep يبقى/يحافظ على	kept

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

let you know يُعلمك	at home في المنزل
will not be able to لن يتمكن من	Best regards, مع أطيب التحيات،
thank you for شكراً لك على	grow strong ينمو بقوة
plenty of الكثير من	get enough sleep يحصل على النوم الكافي
for two days لمدة يومين	at least على الأقل

Note

- A business email is a formal message you send to your manager or teacher to give important information. When you are sick, you write a business email to explain your illness, ask for sick leave, and tell them when you will return to work or school.

رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الخاصة بالعمل هي رسالة رسمية ترسلها إلى مديرك أو معلمك لتقديم معلومات مهمة. عندما تكون مريضاً، تكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني خاصة بالعمل لتشرح مرضك، وتطلب إجازة مرضية، وتخبرهم بموعد عودتك إلى العمل أو المدرسة.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

A sick Leave: Business Email

إجازة مرضية: رسالة بريد إلكتروني خاصة بالعمل

New Message

From : Karim

To : Ramy

Subject : Sick Leave for Two Days

Dear Mr. Ramy,

I am writing to let you know that I am not feeling well today. I have a fever and a sore throat, so I need to rest at home.

I will not be able to come to work for two days. I hope to feel better and return on Wednesday, October 15th.

Thank you for your understanding.

Best regards,

Karim Hassan



عزيزي السيد رامي،
أكتب إليك لأعلمك أنني لا أشعر بصحة جيدة اليوم. لدي حمى والتهاب في الحلق، لذا أحتاج إلى الراحة في المنزل.
لن أتمكن من الحضور إلى العمل لمدة يومين. أتمنى أن أشعر بالتحسن وأعود يوم الأربعاء 15 أكتوبر.
شكراً لك على تفهمك.
مع أطيب التحيات،
كريم حسن

Send



Read and notice the following steps:

اقرأ ولاحظ الخطوات الآتية:

Steps of writing a sick leave business email

خطوات كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني خاصة بالعمل بشأن إجازة مرضية



- 1 Write the person who is sending the email in the "From" box.

اكتب الشخص الذي يرسل رسالة البريد الإلكتروني في خانة "From".

Ex: From: Karim

- 2 Write the person who is receiving the email in the "To" box.

اكتب الشخص الذي يستقبل رسالة البريد الإلكتروني في خانة "To".

Ex: To: Ramy



3 Write what the email is about in the "Subject" line.

اكتب موضوع رسالة البريد الإلكتروني في سطر "Subject".

Ex: Subject: Sick Leave for Two Days

4 Write the greeting: we start with "Dear" + the person's name.

اكتب التحية: نبدأ بـ «عزيزي» + اسم الشخص.

Ex: Dear Mr. Ramy,

5 Write the reason for writing and short explanation.

اكتب سبب الكتابة وشرحًا مختصرًا.

Ex: I am writing to let you know that I am not feeling well today. I have a fever and a sore throat, so I need to rest at home.

6 Explain how long the leave will be and when you'll come back.

اشرح كم من الوقت ستكون مدة الإجازة ومتى ستعود.

Ex: I will not be able to come to work for two days. I hope to feel better and return on Wednesday, October 15th.

7 Write a polite closing sentence.

اكتب جملة ختامية مهذبة.

Ex: Best regards,

8 End your email with a formal closing (your full name at the end).

انه رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الخاصة بك بخاتمة رسمية (اسمك الكامل في النهاية).

Ex: Karim Hassan

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



1. Wash Your Hands
Always wash your hands before eating and after using the bathroom to stay clean and healthy.

اغسل يديك

اغسل يديك دائمًا قبل الأكل وبعد استخدام الحمام لتبقى نظيفًا وصحيًا.



2. Eat Healthy Food
Eat fruits, vegetables, and drink plenty of water to help your body grow strong.

تناول طعامًا صحيًا

تناول الفواكه والخضراوات واشرب الكثير من الماء لمساعدة جسمك على النمو بقوة.



3. Exercise Every Day
Play, exercise, and run every day to keep your body strong.

تدرب كل يوم

العب، وتدرّب، واجر كل يوم للحفاظ على قوة جسمك.



4. Get Enough Sleep
Sleep at least 8–10 hours every night so your body and brain can rest.

احصل على نوم كافٍ

ثم على الأقل 8-10 ساعات كل ليلة حتى يستريح جسمك ومخك.



Read and notice the following steps:

اقرأ ولاحظ الخطوات الآتية:

Steps of creating a healthy tip bookmark

خطوات إنشاء إشارة مرجعية لتبصحة صحيحة



• What you need: paper, colors, pencils, markers, stickers

• ما تحتاجه: ورق، ألوان، أقلام رصاص، أقلام تلوين، ملصقات

1 Take a strip of paper in the shape of a bookmark.

خذ شريطاً من الورق على شكل إشارة مرجعية.

2 Front Side:

الوجه الأمامي:

- Write a title for your bookmark, like “Healthy Habits” or “Stay Strong!”
- Draw something related to health, like fruits, water, soap, or a fit person.

– اكتب عنواناً لإشارتك المرجعية، مثل «عادات صحيّة» أو «ابق قوياً!»
– ارسم شيئاً يتعلق بالصحة، مثل الفواكه، الماء، الصابون، أو شخصاً لائقاً بدنياً.

3 Back Side: Write 2–4 short health tips.

الجانِب الخلفي: اكتب 2-4 نصائح صحيّة قصيرة.

Ex: “Wash your hands.” – “Eat vegetables.” – “Drink water every day.”
“Don’t eat too much junk food.”

4 Decorate: Add colors, stickers, or patterns to make your bookmark bright and fun.

رُتّن: أضف ألواناً، ملصقات، أو أنماطاً لجعل إشارتك المرجعية زاهية وممتعة.

5 Share: Show your bookmark to the class and read your health tips aloud.

شارك: اعرض إشارتك المرجعية على الفصل واقرأ نصائحك الصحيّة بصوت عالٍ.

Tryout



Read, choose the correct email part, and write:

اقرأ، اختر جزء رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الصحيح واكتب:

Closing – Greeting – Subject – From – To

- 1 Ramy
- 2 Best regards, Karim Hassan
- 3 Karim
- 4 Dear Mr. Ramy,
- 5 Sick Leave for Two Days

Answers: 1. To 2. Closing 3. From 4. Greeting 5. Subject

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The teacher helped us get a better of the lesson.
a. growing b. understanding c. leaving d. returning
- 2 The human helps us think and learn.
a. brain b. arm c. hand d. leg
- 3 I ended my email with ".....," and then I wrote my full name.
a. Hello b. Dear c. Omar d. Best regards

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

leave – know – well – return – work

Last week, Salma woke up feeling very tired and had to stay at home. She called her manager to explain that she didn't feel ⁽¹⁾ The doctor told her she needed a sick ⁽²⁾ for two days. Her team helped her because she couldn't come to ⁽³⁾ Salma took her medicine and hoped to ⁽⁴⁾ when she felt stronger.

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

- 1 day – strong. – Run – every – your body – keep – to
- 2 at – need – rest – I – to – home.

4 Write a formal email of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني رسمية من (40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

Your name is Taha and your email address is (taha@gmail.com). You are sending this email to Mr. Amr and his email address is (amr@yahoo.com).

"A sick leave"

(rest – return – understanding)

From :

To :

Subject:

Unit 2 Review

Vocabulary

headache	صداع	sore throat	التهاب في الحلق	accidents	حوادث
cough	سعال/كحة	stomachache	ألم المعدة	bandages	ضمادات طبية
check-up	فحص طبي	cuts	جروح	bruises	كدمات
plasters	لاصقات طبية	tests	اختبارات/فحوصات	treatment plan	خطة علاج
care	رعاية	playrooms	غرف لعب	donations	تبرعات
receptionist	موظف استقبال	studies	دراسات	brain	مُخ
sick leave	إجازة مرضية	examination room	غرفة الفحص	fever	حمى (ارتفاع درجة الحرارة)

Language

Talking about Health Rules

- We use “have to/don’t have to/must /mustn’t” to talk about rules or things we should do. All of these are followed by **verb (infinitive)**.

• نستخدم “have to/don’t have to/must /mustn’t” بمعنى «يجب أن/غير مضطر إلى/يجب/لا يجب» للتحدث عن القواعد أو الأشياء التي ينبغي أن نفعلها. كل هذه الكلمات يتبعها فعل (في صيغة المصدر).

Have to to talk about something necessary. للتحدث عن شيء ما ضروري.

Ex: – Students **have to** wash their hands.

Must to talk about a very important/strong rule. للتحدث عن قاعدة مهمة/قوية جدًا.

Ex: – You **must** drink water.

Don’t have to to talk about something not necessary. للتحدث عن شيء ما غير ضروري.

Ex: – We **don’t have to** worry about small cuts because the nurse will help us.

Mustn’t to talk about something not allowed. للتحدث عن شيء ما غير مسموح به.

Ex: – You **mustn’t** eat too much candy.



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1

A Day at the Clinic

- Fady feels tired. He has a headache, a cough, a sore throat, and a fever.

يشعر فادي بالتعب. لديه صداع، سعال، التهاب في الحلق، وحمى.

- His mother takes him to the doctor because he doesn't look well.

تأخذه أمه إلى الطبيب لأنه لا يبدو بصحة جيدة.

- At the clinic, the doctor says Fady looks weak and must rest and drink warm liquids.

في العيادة، يقول الطبيب إن فادي يبدو ضعيفًا ويجب أن يرتاح ويشرب سوائل دافئة.

- Fady and his mother go to the pharmacy to get his medicine so he can get better.

يذهب فادي وأمه إلى الصيدلية لشراء دوائه حتى يتحسن.

Lesson 2

Staying Healthy at School

- The first aid kit at school is in the nurse's room. It has things like bandages, plasters, scissors, and medicine.

توجد حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية في المدرسة في غرفة الممرضة. تحتوي على أشياء مثل الضمادات، اللاصقات الطبية، المقصات، والدواء.

- When a student gets hurt, the nurse checks the kit and helps the student quickly.

عندما يصاب أحد التلاميذ، تفحص الممرضة الحقيبة وتساعد التلميذ بسرعة.

- Students must not open the first aid kit without permission because some things can be dangerous.

يجب على التلاميذ عدم فتح حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية دون إذن لأن بعض الأشياء قد تكون خطيرة.

- Nurses keep the kit clean and ready. They call parents if a student feels sick.

تحافظ الممرضات على أن تكون الحقيبة نظيفة وجاهزة. يتصلن بالآباء إذا شعر أحد التلاميذ بالمرض.

Lesson 3 (A)

Healing Hands, Caring Hearts

- Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Cairo.

مستشفى 57-3-57 هو مستشفى أطفال مشهور في القاهرة.

- It is very big and helps many sick children.

إنه كبير جدًا ويساعد العديد من الأطفال المرضى.

- All treatment is free because people donate money.

كل العلاج مجاني لأن الناس يتبرعون بالمال.

- Donations help children get the care they need.

التبرعات تساعد الأطفال في الحصول على الرعاية التي يحتاجونها.

- A receptionist helps children check in when they arrive.

يساعد موظف الاستقبال الأطفال في تسجيل دخولهم عند وصولهم.

- A nurse takes them to the examination room for tests.

تأخذهم ممرضة إلى غرفة الفحص للفحوصات.

- The doctor explains the treatment plan after the tests.

يشرح الطبيب خطة العلاج بعد الفحوصات.

- The hospital has playrooms and libraries to help children feel safe.

المستشفى به غرف ألعاب ومكتبات لمساعدة الأطفال على الشعور بالأمان.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

صُدَاع	التهاب في الحلق
حُمَّى (ارتفاع درجة الحرارة)	سعال/كحة
فحص طبي	سوائل دافئة
ألم المعدة	غرفة الفحص
صيدلية	خطير/جاد

Lesson (2)

ضُمادات طبيّة	حوادث
لاصقات طبيّة	مقص/مقصات
جروح	كدمات
حذِر/حريص	والدان/آباء
ممتلئ	مريض
خطير	جاهز/مستعد

Lesson (3)

مستشفى أطفال	رعاية
عمل جماعي	خطة علاج
دراسات	مجاني
اختبارات/فحوصات	موظف استقبال
غرف لعب	تبرعات

Lessons (4&5)

إجازة مرضية	مُخ
فَقْهَم	عادات صحيّة
خضراوات	عمل



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
hurt		know	.....
rest		arrive	.....
feel		explain	.....
love		pay	.....
drink		continue	.....
hope		give	.....
get		show	.....
take		return	.....
need		wash	.....
help		use	.....
tell		exercise	.....
call		come	.....
has		write	.....
open		run	.....
check		keep	.....

Writing Station



حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"A children's hospital"

- 1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below. فُكِّرْ فِي كَلِمَات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصنّفها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. Cairo 2. treatment 3. money

Verbs

1. help 2. get 3. donate

Others

1. famous 2. sick 3. free

- 2 Form your sentences. كوّن جملتك.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكملة الجملة)

1. Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Cairo, Egypt. 2. It helps children who are sick.
3. Children get all treatment for free. 4. Many people in Egypt donate money to the hospital.

- 3 Write your paragraph. اكتب فقرتك.

Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Cairo, Egypt. It helps children who are sick. Children get all treatment for free. Many people in Egypt donate money to the hospital. The hospital has playgrounds, libraries, and a lot of fun places.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"Your last sickness"

Nouns

1. 2. 3.

Verbs

1. 2. 3.

Others

1. 2. 3.

- Your sentences 1.
3.

2.
4.

Your paragraph

فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

My sickness

Today I'm sick and I don't feel well. I have a headache, a cough, and a sore throat. My body hurts and I think I have a fever. My mother will take me to the clinic so the doctor can help me get better.



The first aid kit at our school

We have a big first aid kit in our school nurse's room. It has bandages, plasters, scissors, and medicine for cuts and bruises. If a student gets hurt, the nurse helps quickly and uses the kit. Students mustn't open it without permission.



Hospital 57-3-57

Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Cairo. It is big and helps sick children. All treatment is free because people donate money. A receptionist and a nurse help children when they arrive. The doctor explains their treatment plan.



Taking a sick leave

Last week, I stayed at home because I didn't feel well. I had a fever and a sore throat, so I couldn't go to school. My mother told the teacher about my sick leave. I rested, took my medicine, and felt better the next day.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Match the word with its meaning:

صِل الكلمة بمعناها:

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| 1 clinic | a a place where you buy your medicine |
| 2 waiting room | b pain in the head |
| 3 receptionist | c a place where doctors help sick people feel better |
| 4 pharmacy | d the person who helps at the desk |
| 5 headache | e a place in the hospital where people sit until they see the doctor |

2 Fill in the blanks (have to/don't have to):

املأ الفراغات بـ (have to/don't have to):

- 1 Students tell a teacher or the nurse if someone is injured.
- 2 Nurses make sure the first aid kit is always ready and full.
- 3 You drink plenty of water every day to stay healthy.
- 4 Students bring their own bandages because the nurse already has them in the first aid kit.

3 Fill in the blanks to complete the sentences:

املأ الفراغات لإكمال الجمل:

comfortable – readable – terrible – breakable – possible

- 1 My new phone is not It's super strong.
- 2 The teacher's handwriting is
- 3 It's to finish your homework before dinner if you start now.
- 4 The seat is so soft and
- 5 I didn't like the movie; it was

Test on unit (2)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. We should wash our hands before eating meals. ()
2. Fruits and vegetables give us energy. ()
3. Sleeping enough hours at night makes our body and brain stressed. ()
4. Simple exercises keep us weak. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This hospital offers treatment. Patients don't pay any money.
a. cheap b. famous c. free d. expensive
2. Mazen take his medicine before lunch to get better.
a. mustn't b. have to c. don't have to d. must
3. The new building has three doors to make the place to tourists.
a. access b. reversible c. breakable d. accessible
4. I went to the clinic this morning because I had a terrible
a. email b. room c. headache d. scissors



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

examination – medicine – cough – serious – pharmacy

Yesterday, Noha had a stomachache and didn't feel well at school. The teacher sent her to the nurse, who took her to the ⁽¹⁾ room for a quick check-up. The nurse said her problem wasn't ⁽²⁾ and that she only needed rest. Later, Noha's mother took her to the ⁽³⁾ to buy the right ⁽⁴⁾ to get better.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last week, Nour took a sick leave at work because she woke up feeling very tired and weak. She had a headache and a bad cough, so she knew she couldn't go to the office. Nour called her manager in the morning to explain the situation and said she needed one day to rest. She stayed at home and drank warm soup. Later, she took her medicine and slept for a long time. By the evening, she started to feel much better and planned to return the next day.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about Nour taking a at work.
a. ticket b. bus c. train d. sick leave
- The underlined word "weak" is the opposite of ".....".
a. strong b. famous c. careful d. ready

(B) Answer the following questions:

- How long did Nour need to rest?

.....

- What did Nour plan by the evening?

.....

- What does the underlined pronoun "she" refer to?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. I (have to) wash my hands because they are clean.
2. The armchair is very (comfort) for my arms.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. continue – children – help – studies. – their – Teachers
.....
2. safe. – stay – kit – everyone – The – helps – first aid
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. Why did fady's mother take him to the clinic
.....
2. i will not be able to come to work for two days
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“Hospital 57-3-57”

(free – donations – receptionist)

Al-Azhar Test

on unit (2)

(A) Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



1. Omar felt sick when he arrived at
a. supermarket b. school c. museum d. work
2. Omar took a on that day.
a. liquid b. sick leave c. hospital d. playroom
3. Omar felt he was much better
a. at night b. in the morning c. in the evening d. the next day

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

serious – doctor – liquids – sore throat

Father: You don't look well. What's wrong?

Dina: I have a ⁽¹⁾ I also have a bad cough.

Father: We have to go to the ⁽²⁾

Dina: I'll be fine, Dad. I just need to rest and drink warm ⁽³⁾ It's not ⁽⁴⁾

Father: Okay. If you don't feel better, we'll have to go to the doctor.

(C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. You touch this bandage; it's not clean.
a. having to b. mustn't c. have to d. must
2. Good people money to hospitals to give free treatment to patients.
a. explain b. donate c. show d. help
3. These bottles are You can get them clean again.
a. wash b. washable c. washing d. readable
4. The kit has bandages and plasters for cuts and bruises.
a. room b. student c. parent d. first aid

**4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:**

1. We have to cleaned cuts before they get dirty. (.....)
2. This glass is break. You can easily break it. (.....)
3. Dana mustn't go to the doctor because she is sick. (.....)
4. He have a stomachache and a headache. (.....)

(D) Reading Comprehension**5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Qasr Al Ainy Hospital in Cairo is one of the oldest and most important hospitals in Egypt. It helps adults who are sick and need medical care. When a patient arrives, a receptionist checks their information, and a nurse takes them to the right rooms for tests. The doctors explain the treatment plan clearly and give the patient advice to feel better. The hospital has emergency rooms, clinics, and modern equipment to help people quickly. Many skilled doctors and nurses work together every day to care for all patients.

(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The passage is about a hospital in Giza. ()
2. The hospital has very old equipment. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

3. The opposite of the underlined word "adults" is ".....".
 a. nurses b. doctors c. parents d. children
4. The checks the patient's information when they arrive.
 a. doctor b. nurse c. receptionist d. farmer
5. The doctors explain the plan clearly to the patient.
 a. treatment b. plant c. house d. hospital

(E) Writing**6 Write an e-mail of FOUR (4) sentences:**

- Your name is Huda and your email address is (huda@gmail.com). Your friend's name is Karim and his email address is (karim@yahoo.com).

"The first aid kit at your school"

(nurse's room – bandages – injured – ready)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3 Unit

Suitcase Stories

Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Use target vocabulary to discuss travel preparations and destinations استخدام مفردات مُستهدفة لمناقشة استعدادات ووجهات السفر
- Express future plans and intentions using "going to" in affirmative, negative, and question forms التعبير عن الخطط والنوايا المستقبلية باستخدام "going to" في صيغ الإثبات، النفي، والسؤال
- Talk about future travel plans in a role play format التحدث عن خطط السفر المستقبلية بأسلوب تبادل الأدوار

Listening

- Identify the gist in short dialogs about travel plans تحديد الفكرة الأساسية في محادثات قصيرة عن خطط السفر
- Identify specific details in short dialogs about travel plans تحديد تفاصيل محددة في محادثات قصيرة عن خطط السفر
- Recognize the meaning of travel-related unknown vocabulary in spoken texts تمييز معنى المفردات غير المعروفة المتعلقة بالسفر في نصوص منظوقة

Reading

- Identify the main idea in short text about Egypt and camping تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية في نص قصير عن مصر والتخييم
- Identify key details in texts about travel experiences تحديد التفاصيل الأساسية في نصوص عن تجارب السفر
- Recognize the meaning of unknown words using clues تمييز معاني الكلمات غير المعروفة باستخدام الأدلة

Writing

- Write about future plans using "going to" الكتابة عن خطط مستقبلية باستخدام "going to"
- Write an informal email invitation to a friend كتابة دعوة غير رسمية عبر رسالة بريد إلكتروني لصديق
- Design a travel adventure book تصميم كتاب مغامرات عن السفر

Lesson

1

Off We Go!

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:



Play Audio

New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة



suitcase

حقيرة سفر



pack

يحمز



travel

يسافر



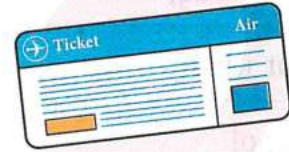
crowded

مزدحم



beach

شاطئ



ticket

تذكرة

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

finally	أخيرًا	camera	كاميرا	toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان
vacation	عطلة/إجازة	families	عائلات	songs	أغاني
time	وقت	sunscreen	واقي شمس	sleeping	النوم
bus station	محطة حافلة/أتوبيس	swimming suit	بدلة سباحة	library	مكتبة
already	بالفعل	except	ما عدا	summer clothes	ملابس صيفية
Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي	Bibliotheca Alexandrina	مكتبة الإسكندرية		

Adjectives الصفات

excited

متحمّس

new

جديد



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
finish ينتهي	finished	put يضع	put
need يحتاج	needed	sing يعني	sang
pass يمر/يمضي	passed	make يجعل/يصنع	made
want يريد	wanted	forget ينسى	forgot

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

What about you?	ماذا عنك؟	double-check	يتحقق مرة أخرى
By the way,	بالمناسبة،	That's okay.	لا بأس.
Great idea!	فكرة عظيمة!	of course	بالطبع
Me too!	أنا أيضًا!	See you!	أراك لاحقًا!
Not yet.	ليس بعد.	build sandcastles	بيني قلاعًا رملية

Definitions

تعريفات

suitcase	حقية سفر	a large bag for clothes when traveling	حقية كبيرة للملابس عند السفر
pack	يحزم	to put things in a bag before a trip	أن يضع أشياء في حقبة قبل رحلة
travel	يسافر	to go to another place	أن يذهب إلى مكان آخر
crowded	مزدحم	full of many people	مليء بالعديد من الناس
beach	شاطئ	a sandy place near the sea	مكان رملي قريب من البحر
ticket	تذكرة	something that proves you can enter a place or get a service	شيء ما يثبت أنه يمكنك دخول مكان ما أو الحصول على خدمة ما

**(Conversation) main points** النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة

- Sara and Sohaila are excited because they are going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow.
سارة وسهيله متحمستان لأنهما ستسافران إلى الإسكندرية غدًا.
- Sohaila already packed her suitcase except for her toothbrush.
حزمت سهيلة حقيبة السفر الخاصة بها بالفعل ما عدا فرشاة أسنانها.
- Sara's mother has the bus tickets, and the bus will be crowded because of summer vacation.
والدة سارة معها تذاكر الأتوبيس، والأتوبيس سيكون مزدحمًا بسبب العطلة الصيفية.
- They want to see Qaitbay Citadel and the Bibliotheca Alexandrina.
يريدان رؤية قلعة قايتباي ومكتبة الإسكندرية.
- They will double-check their suitcases before sleeping.
سيتحققان مرة أخرى من حقائب السفر الخاصة بهما قبل النوم.

Conversation**Last-Minute Packing** حزم الأمتعة في اللحظة الأخيرة**Read and notice:**

اقرأ ولاحظ:

**Sara**

1 Sohaila, I'm so excited – we're finally going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow!
يا سهيلة، أنا متحمسة جدًا - سنسافر أخيرًا إلى الإسكندرية غدًا!

**Sohaila**

2 I'm so excited too! Did you pack your suitcase?
أنا متحمسة جدًا أيضًا! هل حزمت حقيبة السفر الخاصة بك؟



3 Not yet. I'm going to pack tonight. I need to put in my summer clothes, my swimming suit, and my camera. What about you?
ليس بعد. سأحزمها الليلة. أحتاج أن أضع ملابس الصيف، بدلة السباحة الخاصة بي، وكاميرتي. ماذا عنك؟



4 I already packed my suitcase yesterday! I put in everything except my toothbrush. By the way, do you have our bus tickets?
لقد حزمت بالفعل حقيبة السفر الخاصة بي أمس! وضعت كل شيء ما عدا فرشاة أسناني. بالمناسبة، هل لديك تذاكر الأتوبيس الخاصة بنا؟



5 Yes, my mother has all the tickets. She told me the bus is going to be very crowded because it's the summer vacation and many families are traveling.

نعم، والدتي معها جميع التذاكر. أخبرتني أن الأتوبيس سيكون مزدحمًا جدًا لأنها عطلة الصيف والعديد من العائلات مسافر.

6

That's okay. We can sing songs together to make the time pass quickly!

لا بأس. يمكننا غناء الأغاني معًا لتمضية الوقت بسرعة!



7 Great idea! What are you most excited to see in Alexandria?

فكرة عظيمة! ما هو أكثر شيء متحمس لرؤيته في الإسكندرية؟

8

I really want to see Qaitbay Citadel and the new library, Bibliotheca Alexandrina. And of course, I'm excited to build sandcastles by the beach!

أريد حقًا رؤية قلعة قايتباي والمكتبة الجديدة، مكتبة الإسكندرية. وبالطبع، أنا متحمس لبناء قلاع رملية بجوار الشاطئ!



9 Me too! Don't forget to put sunscreen in your suitcase when you finish packing.

أنا أيضًا! لا تنسي أن تضعي واقي الشمس في حقيبة السفر الخاصة بك عند ما تنتهين من حزم أمتعتك.

10

I won't! I'm going to double-check my suitcase before sleeping.

لن أنسى! سأتحقق مرة أخرى من حقيبة السفر الخاصة بي قبل النوم.



11 Me too. I'll see you tomorrow at the bus station!

أنا أيضًا. سأراك غدًا في محطة الأتوبيس!

12 See you!

أراك لاحقًا!





Play Audio

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False: استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

- 1 Soha is going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow. ()
- 2 She is very excited. ()
- 3 She forgot to pack her sunscreen. ()
- 4 They are going to travel by bus. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I my suitcase to travel tomorrow.
a. traveled b. packed c. baked d. passed
- 2 Hana uses to protect her skin from the sun.
a. toothbrush b. camera c. suitcase d. sunscreen
- 3 There are a lot of travelers at the bus station. It's
a. crowded b. empty c. quiet d. calm
- 4 Qaitbay is a famous place in Alexandria.
a. Citadel b. Bibliotheca c. Minaret d. Palace
- 5 A is a sandy place near the sea.
a. field b. mountain c. beach d. street
- 6 The officer checked their before getting onto the plane.
a. songs b. tickets c. libraries d. screens
- 7 I'm going to spend my summer by the beach in Matrouh.
a. station b. bus c. clothes d. vacation
- 8 The children sandcastles on the beach.
a. forget b. check c. build d. travel

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

suitcase – pass – beach – sing – bus

I spend every summer vacation in Hurghada. I travel there by ⁽¹⁾ with my family. The day before traveling, I help my mother pack the ⁽²⁾ On our way on the bus, we ⁽³⁾ songs, and that makes the time ⁽⁴⁾ quickly. When we reach Hurghada, we always go to the beach on our first day.

2 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 to – I'm – my – double-check – suitcase. – going

2 you – tickets? – have – Do – bus – our

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 did you pack your suitcase

2 I want to see bibliotheca Alexandrina

4 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

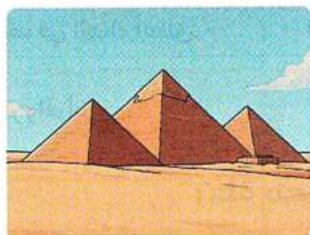
اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"Your summer vacation in Alexandria"

(packed – Qaitbay Citadel – beach)

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



The Pyramids

الأهرامات



Egyptian temple

معبد مصري



a boat on the Nile River

مركب على نهر النيل

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

home country	الوطن الأم	abroad	خارج البلاد	places	أماكن
outfits	ملابس	sunglasses	نظارات شمسية	weather	طقس
adventure	مغامرة	Sphinx	أبو الهول	tombs	مقابر
world	عالم	stories	قصص	pharaohs	فراعنة
train	قطار	south	جنوب	Ramses II	رمسيس الثاني
Nile cruise	رحلة نيلية	felucca	فلوكة	islands	جزر
trip	رحلة	chance	فرصة	ancient Egyptian kings	ملوك مصر القدماء

Adjectives الصفات

light	خفيف	hot	حار	powerful	عظيم/قوي
beautiful	جميل	famous	مشهور	wonderful	رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
move ينتقل	moved	show يُري/يوضح	showed
start يبدأ	started	take يأخذ/يستقل	took
call يُسمّي/يطلق	called	spend يقضي	spent
explore يستكشف	explored	swim يسبح	swam
learn يتعلم	learned	know يعرف	knew



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

many years ago	منذ سنوات عديدة	one-week vacation	عطلة الأسبوع الواحد
get ready with	يستعد بـ	open-air museum	متحف في الهواء الطلق



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

A Special Trip Home

رحلة مميزة إلى الوطن

Next week, Mr. Maged and his family are going to travel to their home country, Egypt! He is Egyptian, but he moved abroad many years ago. Now, he wants to show his family the most beautiful places in their one-week vacation.

First, they are getting ready with their suitcases, where they packed light outfits, hats and sunglasses for the hot weather.

Their adventure starts in Cairo. They are going to see the Great Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx. They are very excited to see tombs of ancient Egyptian kings as their father told them stories about the ancient pharaohs who built them.

Then, they are going to take a train south to Luxor. People often call it the “world’s greatest open-air museum.” There, they are going to explore the amazing temples of Karnak and Luxor, and learn about powerful kings like Ramses II.

They are going to Aswan on a beautiful Nile cruise. They are going to take a boat called “felucca” and see the beautiful islands.

Finally, they are going to spend the last two days of their trip in Alexandria. They are going to swim in the sea and build sandcastles on its famous beach. This trip is a wonderful chance for the family to know their country together.



الأسبوع القادم، سيسافر السيد ماجد وعائلته إلى وطنهم الأم، مصر! هو مصري، لكنه انتقل للعيش خارج البلاد منذ سنوات عديدة. والآن، يريد أن يري عائلته أجمل الأماكن في عطلة الأسبوع الواحد الخاصة بهم.

أولاً، يستعدون بحقائب السفر الخاصة بهم، حيث حزموا ملابس خفيفة، قبعات، ونظارات شمسية للطقس الحار. تبدأ مغامرتهم في القاهرة، إنهم ذاهبون لرؤية الأهرامات العظيمة في الجيزة وأبو الهول. إنهم متحمسون جداً لرؤية مقابر ملوك مصر القدماء حيث حكى لهم والدهم قصصاً عن الفراعنة القدماء الذين بنوها.

بعد ذلك، سيأخذون قطاراً جنوباً إلى الأقصر. غالباً ما يُسميها الناس «أعظم متحف في الهواء الطلق في العالم». هناك، سيستكشفون معبدي الكرنك والأقصر المذهلين، ويتعرفون على ملوك عظماء مثل رمسيس الثاني.

سيذهبون إلى أسوان في رحلة نيلية جميلة. سيأخذون مركباً يُسمى «فلوكة» ويرون الجزر الجميلة.

وأخيراً، سيقضون آخر يومين من رحلتهم في الإسكندرية. سيسبحون في البحر وينون قلاعاً رملية على شاطئها المشهور. هذه الرحلة فرصة رائعة للعائلة للتعرف على بلدهم مغاً.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The of Karnak and Luxor show Egypt's rich history.
a. temples b. schools c. beaches d. countries
- 2 Ramses II was a/an Egyptian king.
a. modern b. new c. ancient d. recent
- 3 They are going to Aswan on a beautiful Nile
a. train b. cruise c. flight d. road
- 4 We wear light in summer.
a. adventures b. chances c. outfits d. tombs

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

Sphinx – build – swim – adventure – pharaohs

Egypt is a great country. Many tourists from all over the world visit it every year. They enjoy its amazing places. They can start their ⁽¹⁾ by going to the Great Pyramids of Giza and the ⁽²⁾, and by seeing the tombs of ancient Egyptian kings and ⁽³⁾ They cannot only visit the Pyramids and temples but also ⁽⁴⁾ in its seas.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 What does Mr. Maged want to show his family?
.....
- 2 What do people often call Luxor?
.....
- 3 Where are Mr. Maged and his family going to spend the last two days of their trip?
.....



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Planned Future (Am - Is - Are + going to)

(Am - Is - Are + going to) المستقبل المخطط له

Usage

الاستخدام

- We use "going to" when we talk about something we plan to do in the future.
- نستخدم "going to" بمعنى «سوف» عندما نتحدث عن شيء ما نخطط للقيام به في المستقبل.

Form

التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

Negative النفي

Question الاستفهام

1 Affirmative



I	→	am	} + going to + base verb (الفعل الأساسي) ...
He, She, It, Singular noun (اسم مفرد)	→	is	
You, We, They, Plural noun (اسم جمع)	→	are	

Ex: – I **am** going to visit the beach.

– Sally **is** going to pack her suitcase.

– They **are** going to stay in a hotel.



2 Negative



I	→	am	} → not + going to + base verb ...
He, She, It, Singular noun	→	is	
You, We, They, Plural noun	→	are	



Ex: – I **am not** going to **forget** my passport.

– Omar **is not** going to **swim** today.

– We **are not** going to **stay** at home.

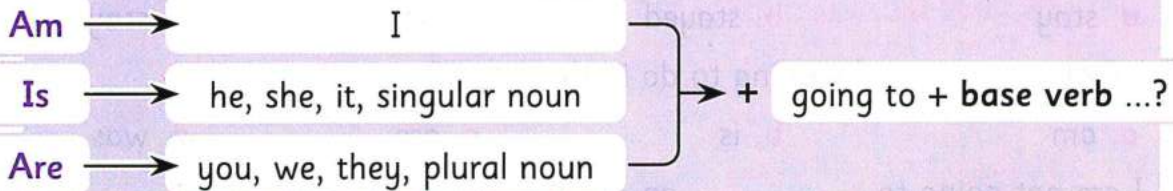


3

Question



Yes/No question (السؤال بـ (هل)



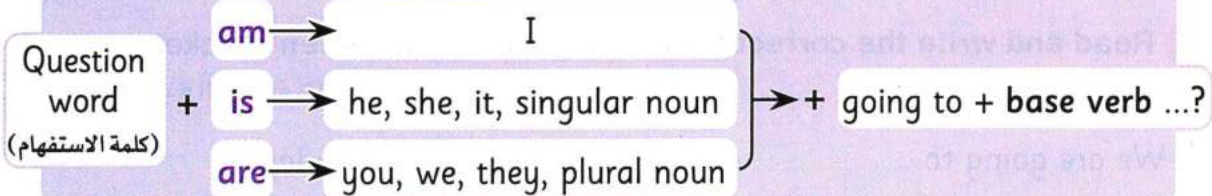
Ex: – **Am** I going to **take** my camera?

– **Is** she going to **wear** sunglasses?

– **Are** they going to **travel** to Cairo?



Wh-question (السؤال بأداة الاستفهام)



Ex: – Where **are** you going to **travel** next holiday?



Key words (الكلمات الدالة)

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| • tomorrow | غداً | • later | لاحقاً/فيما بعد |
| • soon | قريباً | • in the future | في المستقبل |
| • next (week/month/year) | (الأسبوع/الشهر/السنة) القادم/القادمة | • in a few (minutes/hours/days) | في خلال (دقائق/ساعات/أيام) قليلة |
| • one day | يوماً ما | | |

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 They going to travel to Luxor next month.
a. am b. is c. are d. were
- 2 I warm clothes tomorrow. It will be cold.
a. wore b. wear
c. was wearing d. am going to wear
- 3 Mona is going to at a hotel next weekend.
a. stay b. stayed c. stays d. staying
- 4 What he going to do in the future?
a. am b. is c. are d. was
- 5 I am not going to an email later today.
a. writing b. writes c. write d. wrote
- 6 The teacher explain the lesson in a few minutes.
a. go b. going c. going to d. is going to
- 7 they going to call me soon?
a. Are b. Is c. Am d. Do
- 8 My sister is going to start a new job
a. yesterday b. a day ago c. last week d. tomorrow

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (الكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 We are going to (visits) our cousins next Friday.
- 2 She (wasn't) going to buy a dress tomorrow.
- 3 I am (going) build a sandcastle when I go to the beach.
- 4 (Are) the bus going to arrive in a few minutes?
- 5 They (isn't) going to book the tickets tomorrow.
- 6 Saad is going (too) finish his homework soon.
- 7 When are they going to (watching) the movie?
- 8 Yara is going to meet her friends (last) week.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Tom, John, and Dona are talking about their vacation in Egypt. Tom is interested in history, so he visited Luxor, known as "the world's greatest open-air museum." There, he explored the temples of Karnak and Luxor and learned about powerful kings like Ramses II. John visited Aswan, took a felucca on the Nile, and saw the beautiful islands, including Elephantine Island. Dona spent her vacation in Alexandria, where she enjoyed the sea and visited Qaitbay Citadel and the Bibliotheca Alexandrina.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The underlined pronoun "he" refers to
 a. Tom b. John c. Dona d. Ramses II
- 2 A felucca is a
 a. bus b. train c. boat d. plane

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What does the text talk about?

- 4 Why did Tom choose to visit Luxor?

- 5 What places did Dona visit in Alexandria?

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 My family and I (is) going to fly to London next summer.
- 2 He is going (cook) some rice tomorrow.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- Mr. maged is going to travel to egypt.

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

camping	تخييم	torch	مصباح يدوي/كشاف	campsite	المُخيّم
mountains	جبال	carefully	بحرص/بعناية	moments	لحظات
animals	حيوانات	campfire	نار المُخيّم	water bottle	زجاجة ماء
nature trail	مسار/طريق طبيعي	desert plants	نباتات صحراوية	Wadi El Gemal Park	منتزه وادي الجمال

Adjectives الصفات

warm	دافئ/ثقيل	happy	سعيد	special	مميز/خاص
------	-----------	-------	------	---------	----------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
pack يحزم	packed	tell يخبر/يحكي	told
receive يستلم	received	say يقول	said
visit يزور	visited	teach يُعلّم/يُدّرس	taught
arrive يصل	arrived	leave يغادر	left
share يشارك	shared	think يفكر/يعتقد	thought
hike يتنزه	hiked		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة	set up our tents	ننصب خيامنا
In the evening,	في المساء،	sit around	يجلس حول
look for	يبحث عن	keep it clean	يحافظ على نظافته
so much fun	ممتع جدًا	take lots of photos	يلتقط الكثير من الصور

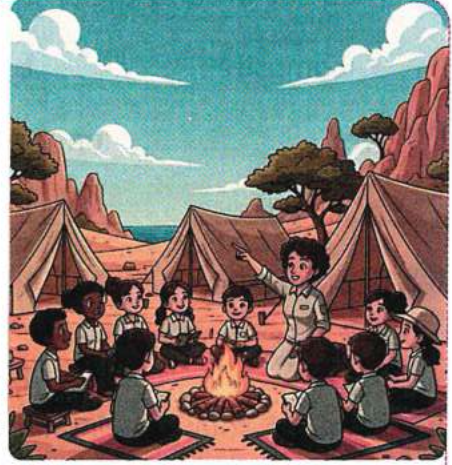


Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

رحلة تخيم مدرستنا Our School Camping Trip

Next weekend, our class is going to travel to the beautiful Wadi El Gemal Park for a school camping trip. We are going to pack our suitcases with warm clothes, a torch, and a water bottle. Our teacher told us those who want to go on the trip, they need to receive their bus tickets today. She said the campsite is going to be crowded because another school is visiting too.



When we arrive, we are going to set up our tents near some amazing mountains. Our teacher is going to teach us about desert plants and animals. In the evening, we are going to sit around a campfire and tell stories. I am going to take lots of photos to share happy moments with my family.

The next morning, we are going to hike on a nature trail and look for special birds. Before we leave, we are going to clean the campsite carefully to keep it clean. This is going to be my first camping trip, and I think it is going to be so much fun!

في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع القادم، سيسافر صفنا إلى منتزه وادي الجمال الجميل في رحلة تخيم مدرسية. سنحزم حقائب السفر الخاصة بنا بملابس ثقيلة، مصباح يدوي، وزجاجة ماء. أخبرتنا معلمتنا أنه على الراغبين في الذهاب إلى الرحلة، استلام تذاكر الأتوبيس اليوم. قالت إن المخيم سيكون مزدحمًا لأن مدرسة أخرى تزوره أيضًا.

عندما نصل، سننصب خيامنا بالقرب من بعض الجبال المذهلة. ستعلمنا معلمتنا عن نباتات وحيوانات صحراوية. في المساء، سنجلس حول نار المخيم ونحكي القصص. سألتقط الكثير من الصور لمشاركة اللحظات السعيدة مع عائلتي.

في صباح اليوم التالي، سنتنزه في مسار طبيعي ونبحث عن الطيور المميزة. قبل أن نغادر، سننظف المخيم بعناية للحفاظ على نظافته. ستكون هذه أول رحلة تخيم لي، وأعتقد أنها ستكون ممتعة جدًا!

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 They sat around the because it was cold near the mountains.
a. campsite b. campfire c. camping d. campaign
- 2 We on trails and enjoyed the beautiful nature.
a. hiked b. received c. packed d. shared
- 3 Bedouins live in made of cloth in the desert.
a. tents b. towers c. apartments d. houseboats
- 4 Drinking soup in winter makes me feel
a. cold b. freezing c. chilly d. warm

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

in – take – moments – torch – around

My favorite hobby is camping. I'm going to camp in Siwa Oasis next weekend. We usually go there and stay in tents. At night, we sit ⁽¹⁾ the campfire. I'm going to take warm clothes, a ⁽²⁾, and water bottles with me. I'm also going to ⁽³⁾ lots of photos to share happy ⁽⁴⁾ with my friends.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 Where is the class going to travel next weekend?

.....

- 2 When do the students need to receive their bus tickets?

.....

- 3 What is the teacher going to teach the students about?

.....

B

Word Building Skills

Listen and repeat:

استمع وردّد:



Play Audio

Adverbs ending in -ly الظروف المنتهية بـ -ly

- An adverb tells us how we do something. We can make many adverbs by adding **-ly** to adjectives. يخبرنا الظرف بكيفية فعل شيء ما. يمكننا تكوين العديد من الظروف بإضافة -ly إلى الصفات.
- The ending -ly is usually pronounced /li/. النهاية -ly عادة ما تُنطق /li/.

Adjectives صفات	Adverbs ظروف	Examples أمثلة
quick سريع	quickly بسرعة	The rabbit runs quickly.
loud عالٍ	loudly بصوت عالٍ	The children sing loudly.
careful حريص	carefully بحرص	She paints the picture carefully.
quiet هادئ	quietly بهدوء	She walked quietly into the library.
brave شجاع	bravely بشجاعة	She faced the storm bravely.
strong قوي	strongly بقوة	The wind blew strongly last night.
slow بطيء	slowly ببطء	The turtle moved slowly.
happy سعيد	happily بسعادة	The kid sings happily.

Spelling Rule

قاعدة التهجئة

- If an adjective ends in -y, we change the y to i before adding -ly. إذا انتهت الصفة بـ -y، فإننا نغير y إلى i قبل إضافة -ly.

Ex: - happy → happily

Tryout



Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- She laughed (loud – loudly).
- I played with my friends (happily – happy).
- Ali rides his bike (careful – carefully).

3. carefully

2. happily

1. loudly

Answers:

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Tarek. Last week, my family and I went on a trip to Dahab, South Sinai, Egypt. We chose a magnificent spot for our campsite. The view was amazing, with the sea and mountains around us. We set up our tents and put our backpacks inside. The weather was cold, so we lit a fire. We hiked on a trail and enjoyed the beautiful nature. In the evening, we shared stories, grilled meat, and watched the shining stars.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 The underlined word "amazing" means ".....".

a. ugly

b. strong

c. hot

d. wonderful

2 Dahab is located in

a. Cairo

b. Giza

c. North Sinai

d. South Sinai

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

3 What was the weather like at the campsite?

.....

4 What does the underlined pronoun "We" refer to?

.....

5 Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

1 The cheetah runs (quick).

2 He spoke (quiet) so no one could hear.

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

invitation	دعوة	boat	مركب/قارب	food	طعام
koshari	كشري	vehicle	مركبة/عربة	fact	حقيقة
way	طريقة/وسيلة	cities	مدن	sentence	جملة
country	بلد/دولة	the Nile River	نهر النيل	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر

Adjectives الصفات

big	كبير	old	قديم	delicious	لذيذ
cheap	رخيص	the best	الأفضل	amazing	مذهل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
invite يدعو	invited	ride يركب	rode
try يجرب	tried	come يأتي/يحضر	came
promise يعد	promised		
talk يتحدث	talked		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

show you around	يأخذك في جولة	I miss you so much.	افتقدك كثيراً.
I can't wait to see you!	لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك!	I hope you are doing well!	أتمنى أن تكون بخيراً!
Please let me know	من فضلك أخبرني	forget to	ينسى أن



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Message

From : Ramy

To : Max

Subject : Invitation to visit Egypt

Dear Max,

Greeting تحية

Invitation دعوة

I hope you are doing well! I miss you so much. I want to invite you to visit Egypt this summer. It's an amazing country with lots of fun places to see! You must visit the Great Pyramids of Giza—they're so big and old! We can also ride a boat on the Nile River and see the beautiful Red Sea. Don't forget to try Egyptian food like koshari. It's delicious! Details تفاصيل

My family and I will show you around. I promise you'll have the best time! Please let me know if you can come. I can't wait to see you!

Your friend,

Closing خاتمة

Ramy

عزيزي ماكس،

أتمنى أن تكون بخيرا! أفتقدك كثيرا. أريد أن أدعوك لزيارة مصر هذا الصيف. إنها دولة مذهلة بها الكثير من الأماكن الممتعة لرؤيتها! يجب عليك زيارة أهرامات الجيزة العظيمة - إنها كبيرة وقديمة! يمكننا أيضا ركوب مركب على نهر النيل ورؤية البحر الأحمر الجميل. لا تنس تجربة الطعام المصري، مثل الكشري. إنه لذيذ! سأخذك أنا وعائلتي في جولة. أعدك بأنك ستقضي وقتا ممتعا! من فضلك أخبرني إن كان بإمكانك الحضور. لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك!

صديقك،

رامي

Send

Read and notice the following steps:

اقرأ ولاحظ الخطوات الآتية:

Steps of writing an email invitation to visit Egypt

خطوات كتابة دعوة عبر رسالة بريد إلكتروني لزيارة مصر



1 **Greeting:** Start with "Dear [Name]," and a friendly opening.

التحية: ابدأ بـ «عزيزي [الاسم]» وافتتاحية ودية.

2 **Invitation:** Say "I want to invite you to visit Egypt!" «أريد دعوتك لزيارة مصر»

3 **Details:** – **Describe Places:** Pick 2–3 landmarks and write 1–2 sentences about each.

– Add one Egyptian food or activity to try together.

التفاصيل: - وصف الأماكن: اختر 2-3 معالم واكتب جملة أو جملتين عن كل منها.

- أضف طعاما مصرية واحدًا أو نشاطا مصريًا واحدًا لتجربته معًا.



4 Closing: End with "Please let me know if you can come. I can't wait to see you!" and sign your name.

الخاتمة: اختتم بـ «من فضلك أخبرني إن كان بإمكانك الحضور. لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك!» ووقع اسمك.

Read and notice the following steps:

اقرأ ولاحظ الخطوات الآتية:

Steps of designing your own "Travel Adventure Book"



خطوات تصميم «كتاب مغامرات عن السفر» الخاص بك

Create a page for each type of travel:

أنشئ صفحة لكل نوع من أنواع السفر:

1 Draw or find a picture of the vehicle (bus, train, plane, etc.).

ارسم أو ابحث عن صورة للمركبة (أتوبيس، قطار، طائرة، إلخ).

2 Write the name of the vehicle and draw where it travels (e.g., a bus on a road, a plane in the sky, a boat on water).

اكتب اسم المركبة وارسم مكان سفرها (مثلًا، أتوبيس على الطريق، طائرة في السماء، مركب على الماء).

3 Add a "Ticket" (draw one!) and write:

- One fact about this type of travel (e.g., "A train can carry many people at once!").
- One sentence about what you are going to do on this trip (e.g., "I am going to look out the window at the scenery!").

أضف «تذكرة» (ارسم واحدة!) واكتب:

- حقيقة واحدة عن هذا النوع من السفر (مثلًا، «يمكن للقطار أن يحمل العديد من الأشخاص في وقت واحد»).
- جملة واحدة عما ستفعله في هذه الرحلة (مثلًا: «سأنظر من النافذة إلى المناظر الطبيعية»).

Look and read:

انظروا اقرأ:

Example Page:

Vehicle: Bus

Fact: Buses are a cheap way to travel to school or to visit cities.

My Sentence: I am going to talk with my friends and sing songs on the bus.



صفحة مثال:

المركبة: الأتوبيس

حقيقة: الأتوبيسات وسيلة رخيصة للانتقال إلى المدرسة أو لزيارة المدن.

جملتي: سأحدث مع أصدقائي وأغني الأغاني في الأتوبيس.

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Let's ride a on the Nile River.
a. bus b. boat c. plane d. train
- 2 Koshari is an Egyptian
a. food b. drink c. cloth d. crop
- 3 I'm saving money. I'll take the bus because it's
a. expensive b. cheap c. delicious d. happy

② Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

Sea – travel – places – walk – delicious

I sent an email inviting my friend, Lucas, to visit Egypt. I'm sure he will enjoy the amazing ⁽¹⁾ here, like the Great Pyramids of Giza, the Nile River, and the beaches along the beautiful Red ⁽²⁾ He can also try our ⁽³⁾ Egyptian food, such as koshari and hawawshi. We can ⁽⁴⁾ around the city by bus.

③ Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

- 1 songs – sing – the – on – We – bus.
- 2 hope – I – are – you – well! – doing

④ Write an email invitation of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب دعوة عبر البريد الإلكتروني من أربعين (40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

Your name is Sally and your email address is (sally@yahoo.com). Your friend's name is Lona and her email address is (lona@gmail.com).

"A visit to Egypt"

(invite – places – food)

From :

To :

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 3 Review

Vocabulary

suitcase	حقيبة سفر	pack	يحزم	travel	يسافر
crowded	مزدحم	beach	شاطئ	ticket	تذكرة
warm	دافئ/ثقيل	campsite	المُخيم	campfire	نار المُخيم
torch	مصباح يدوي/كشاف	nature trail	مسار/طريق طبيعي	koshari	كشري
vacation	عطلة/إجازة	camera	كاميرا	pharaohs	فراعنة
sunscreen	واقي شمس	outfits	ملابس	camping	تخييم
abroad	خارج البلاد	sunglasses	نظارات شمسية	Nile cruise	رحلة نيلية
vehicle	مركبة/عربة	cheap	رخيص	mountains	جبال
Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر	The Pyramids	الأهرامات
Egyptian temple	معبد مصري	Bibliotheca Alexandrina	مكتبة الإسكندرية	a boat on the Nile River	مركب على نهر النيل

Language

Planned Future (Am – Is – Are + going to)

- We use "going to" when we talk about something we plan to do in the future.
- نستخدم "going to" بمعنى «سوف» عندما نتحدث عن شيء ما نخطط للقيام به في المستقبل.

Affirmative



Subject + **am/is/are** + going to + base verb ...

Ex: – I **am** going to visit the beach.

Negative



Subject + **am/is/are** + **not** + base verb ...

Ex: – Omar **is not** going to swim today.

Yes/No question



Am/Is/Are + subject + going to + base verb ...?

Ex: – **Is** she going to wear sunglasses?

Wh-question



Question word + **am/is/are** + subject + going to + base verb ...?

Ex: – Where **are** you going to travel next holiday?



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1

Off We Go!

- Sara and Sohaila are excited to travel to Alexandria.
سارة وسهيله متحمستان للسفر إلى الإسكندرية.
- Sohaila packed her suitcase yesterday.
سهيلة حُزمت حقبتها سفرها أمس.
- Sara's mother has the bus tickets.
والدة سارة معها تذاكر الأتوبيس.
- The bus is going to be very crowded because many families are traveling.
سيكون الأتوبيس مزدحمًا جدًا لأن العديد من العائلات مسافر.
- They want to visit Qaitbay Citadel, Bibliotheca Alexandrina, and the beach.
هما تريدان زيارة قلعة قايتباي، مكتبة الإسكندرية، والشاطئ.

Lesson 2

Discovering Egypt

- Mr. Maged and his family are going to travel to Egypt for a one-week vacation.
سيسافر السيد ماجد وعائلته إلى مصر لقضاء عطلة الأسبوع الواحد.
- They are going to start in Cairo and see the Great Pyramids and the Sphinx.
سيبدءون في القاهرة ويرون الأهرامات العظيمة وأبا الهول.
- They are going to go to Luxor to explore the temples of Karnak and Luxor.
سيذهبون إلى الأقصر لاستكشاف معبدي الكرنك والأقصر.
- They are going to visit Aswan, take a Nile cruise, and ride a felucca.
سيزورون أسوان، سيقومون رحلة نيلية، وسيركبون القلوكة.
- They are going to finish their trip in Alexandria by swimming and building sandcastles.
سينتهون من رحلتهم في الإسكندرية بالسباحة وبناء القلاع الرملية.

Lesson 3 (A)

A Night under the Stars

- Our class is going to Wadi El Gemal Park for a camping trip.
سيذهب صفنا إلى منتزه وادي الجمال لرحلة تخيم.
- We are going to pack our suitcases with warm clothes, a torch, and water.
سوف نحزم حقائب السفر الخاصة بنا بملابس ثقيلة، مصباح يدوي، وماء.
- We are going to set up tents and learn about desert plants and animals.
سوف ننصب الخيام وتتعلم عن نباتات وحيوانات صحراوية.
- In the evening, we are going to sit around a campfire and tell stories.
في المساء، سوف نجلس حول نار المخيم ونحكي قصصًا.
- The next morning, we are going to hike, look for birds, and clean the campsite.
في صباح اليوم التالي، سوف نذهب للتزّهر، البحث عن الطيور، وتنظيف المخيم.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

.....	يحزم	.....	حقيّة سفر
.....	مزدحم	.....	يسافر
.....	تذكرة	.....	شاطئ
.....	بدلة سباحة	.....	فرشاة أسنان
.....	واقي شمس	.....	قلعة قايتباي

Lesson (2)

.....	معبد مصري	.....	الأهرامات
.....	مقابر	.....	نظارات شمسية
.....	مركب على نهر النيل	.....	أبو الهول
.....	فلوكة	.....	فرصة
.....	خارج البلاد	.....	جزر

Lesson (3)

.....	دافئ/ثقيل	.....	المُخَيَّم
.....	تخييم	.....	نار المُخَيَّم
.....	زجاجة ماء	.....	لحظات
.....	جبال	.....	نباتات صحراوية
.....	مصباح يدوي/كشاف	.....	مسار/طريق طبيعي

Lessons (4&5)

.....	مركب/قارب	.....	دعوة
.....	طعام	.....	مركبة/عربة
.....	حقيقة	.....	رخيص
.....	مدن	.....	البحر الأحمر



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
finish		need	
put		sing	
pass		explore	
want		show	
forget		start	
move		spend	
take		learn	
call		pack	
swim		say	
know		visit	
tell		leave	
receive		share	
teach		hike	
arrive		ride	
think		talk	
invite		promise	
try		come	



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"A school camping trip"

(1) Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

فكر في كلمات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصرّفها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. suitcase
2. tent
3. campfire

Verbs

1. packed
2. set up
3. sat

Others

1. warm
2. around
3. amazing

(2) Form your sentences.

كوّن جملتك.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكملة الجملة)

1. I packed my suitcase with warm clothes.
3. We sat around a campfire.

2. My class and I set up a tent.

4. We hiked on a nature trail and took many amazing photos.

(3) Write your paragraph.

اكتب فقرتك.

I went on a school camping trip last weekend. I packed my suitcase with warm clothes. My class and I set up a tent. We sat around a campfire. We hiked on a nature trail and took many amazing photos.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"A summer vacation"

Nouns

1.
2.
3.

Verbs

1.
2.
3.

Others

1.
2.
3.

Your sentences

1.
2.
3.
4.

Your paragraph

فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

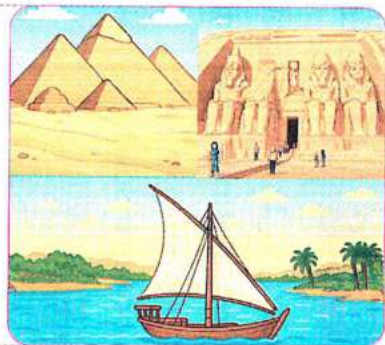
Your summer vacation

I spent my last summer vacation in Alexandria. I packed my suitcase with my summer clothes, a swimming suit, and a camera. I traveled by bus. When I arrived, I visited Qaitbay Citadel. I swam in the sea and built sandcastles on the beach.



A special trip to Egypt

We are going to travel to Egypt. We want to see the Great Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx. We are going to visit Luxor and its ancient temples. We also hope to go to Aswan on a Nile cruise.



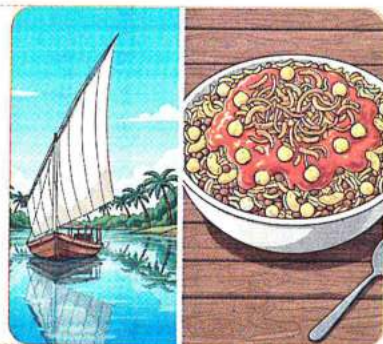
A camping trip

I usually go camping at Wadi El Gemal Park. There, I wear warm clothes. I set up the tent near the amazing mountains. I sit around a campfire. I see desert animals and plants. I also hike on a nature trail.



An invitation to visit Egypt

I invited my friend Peter to visit Egypt this summer. He can visit the ancient tombs. He can also ride a boat on the Nile River and see the beautiful Red Sea. I'm sure he will enjoy the Egyptian food.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Read, think, and match:

اقرأ، فكر وصل:

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| 1 suitcase () | a to put things in a bag before a trip |
| 2 pack () | b a large bag for clothes when traveling |
| 3 travel () | c full of many people |
| 4 crowded () | d to go to another place |
| 5 beach () | e something that proves you can enter a place or get a service |
| 6 ticket () | f a sandy place near the sea |

2 Correct the mistake:

صحح الخطأ:

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1 She <u>going</u> to travel tomorrow. | (.....) |
| 2 They <u>is</u> going to pack their suitcases. | (.....) |
| 3 We are <u>go</u> to build a sandcastle. | (.....) |
| 4 He <u>are</u> going to have a ticket. | (.....) |
| 5 I am <u>go</u> to visit my cousins next week. | (.....) |

3 Complete the following with your own information: أكمل ما يلي بمعلوماتك الخاصة:

Section

Example

Greeting

Dear, I hope you are doing well!

Invitation

I want to invite you to visit

Places

You must see the because
We can also visit

Food/Activity

Don't forget to try It's my favorite!
Please let me know if you can come. I can't wait to see you!

Closing

Your friend,
.....

Test on unit (3)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Wadi El Gemal Park is a beautiful campsite in Egypt. ()
2. People stay there in buildings. ()
3. In the morning, they sit around a campfire and tell stories. ()
4. They always keep the campsite clean. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The is where you can read and borrow books.
a. temple b. beach c. library d. campsite
2. Traveling gives you a to explore other cultures.
a. camera b. chance c. suitcase d. bottle
3. I am going to this book tomorrow.
a. reading b. reads c. read d. to read
4. Are going to eat koshari?
a. I b. he c. she d. they

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

small – Great – camping – tombs – beaches

Egypt has a lot of tourist attractions. It has historical sites like the ⁽¹⁾ Pyramids of Giza, temples in Luxor, and ⁽²⁾ of ancient pharaohs. It also has natural sites like the Red Sea ⁽³⁾, the Nile riverbanks, and mountains and deserts for ⁽⁴⁾ There are also many fun places, such as malls and theme parks.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Adam and Samy are very excited because they are going to travel to Cairo tomorrow. They are packing their suitcases. Their father is going to the bus station to book the tickets at the ticket office. Their sister, Marwa, is preparing the songs they are going to listen to on the bus. Adam wants to see the Cairo Tower and ride a boat on the Nile River. Samy hopes they can also go to Giza so he can see the Great Pyramids. Their mother wants to try koshari from a famous restaurant called "Abu Tarek".

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about a trip to
a. Alexandria b. Cairo c. Luxor d. Aswan
- The underlined word "suitcases" means "large for clothes when traveling".
a. machines b. bags c. ropes d. closets

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Where is Adam and Samy's father going to book the tickets?
.....

4. What does their mother want to try?
.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. Lara is (go) to swim in the pool next Friday.
2. He drove (careful) on the wet road.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. happy – with – He – moments – his family. – shares – his
.....
2. if – can – you – Let – know – come. – me
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. luxor is the world's greatest open-air museum
.....
2. what are you going to pack in your suitcase
.....

8 Write a narrative text of FORTY (40) words using the words below:**“A day in Egypt”**

- What places did you visit in Egypt?
 - What activities could you do there?
 - What food did you try there?
-
-
-
-
-

(A) Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



Play Audio

1. Elisia is going to visit Egypt next
 a. summer b. spring c. winter d. fall
2. She is going to stay in
 a. Cairo b. Giza c. Alexandria d. Sinai
3. She wants to swim in the
 a. river b. sea c. lake d. pond

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

tents – trip – try – stories

Omar : Why are you so excited?

Hamza : I am going to travel to Wadi El Gemal Park for a school camping ⁽¹⁾

Omar : What are you going to do there?

Hamza : We are going to set up ⁽²⁾, sit around a campfire, hike, and tell ⁽³⁾

Omar : Wow! I must ⁽⁴⁾ camping one day.

(C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Samar and Laila stay in a hotel by the beach.
 a. am going to b. is going to c. are going to d. going to
2. I am going to take my camera week.
 a. last b. previous c. next d. later
3. I to the top of the mountain to see the view.
 a. packed b. swam c. invited d. hiked
4. Tourists visit museums and to learn about history.
 a. hospitals b. temples c. stations d. banks



4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

1. The baby cries loud. (.....)
2. We are not go to wear our sunglasses at the beach. (.....)
3. I am going to checking my suitcase. (.....)
4. The firefighter entered the burning building brave. (.....)

(D) ■■ Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I'm Adel. My cousin Wael moved abroad many years ago. He is going to come back to Egypt with his family next month for a one-week vacation. He asked me to prepare a program for him and his family to see the interesting and famous places in Egypt. I think the adventure should start on the Nile River; taking a boat would be great. Then they can visit the Pyramids. I also booked them a hotel in Sharm El-Sheikh, so the children can swim in the sea and build sandcastles.

(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Wael moved abroad many years ago. ()
2. Taking a boat on the Nile River would be bad. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

3. Wael and his family are going to spend a in Egypt.
a. day b. week c. month d. year
4. Wael's family can also the Pyramids.
a. hike b. buy c. visit d. climb
5. Adel booked them a in Sharm El-Sheikh.
a. hotel b. tent c. house d. boat

(E) ✍ Writing

6 Write an e-mail of FOUR (4) sentences:

– Your name is Sara and your email address is (sara@gmail.com). Your friend's name is Lora and her email address is (lora@yahoo.com).

"Visiting Egypt"

(old – boat – beach – koshari)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 1

Vocabulary Summary

Unit 1 Hobbies Make Us Shine!



playing board games



cycling



skating



painting



singing



solving puzzles



playing the piano



crafting with paper

Unit 2 At the Doctor's



headache



sore throat



fever



cough



stomachache

Unit 3 Suitcase Stories



suitcase



pack



travel



crowded



beach



ticket

Language Summary

Unit 1 Hobbies Make Us Shine!

Expressing Ability

1. Present Ability – can

- We use “can” to show what someone is able to do now.

Affirmative



Subject + **can** + base verb ...

- Ex:** – He **can** climb the tree.
– She **can** help her sister cook dinner.

Negative



Subject + **cannot (can't)** + base verb ...

- Ex:** – We **can't** use phones during class.
– She **can't** read stories to her little sister.

2. Past Ability – could

- We use “could” to show what someone was able to do in the past.

Affirmative



Subject + **could** + base verb ...

- Ex:** – I **could** swim when I was seven.
– I **could** speak French when I was in France.

Negative



Subject + **could not (couldn't)** + base verb ...

- Ex:** – He **couldn't** play football when he was little.
– Last year, I **couldn't** sing clearly.

Unit 2 At the Doctor's

Talking about Health Rules

- We use “have to/don't have to/must /mustn't” to talk about rules or things we should do. All of these are followed by verb (infinitive).

**Have to**

To talk about something necessary.

Ex: – You **have to** put bandages on your cuts.**Don't have to**

To talk about something not necessary.

Ex: – Patients **don't have to** worry because nurses give them care.**Must**

To talk about a very important/strong rule.

Ex: – You **must** wear a helmet on your bike.**Mustn't**

To talk about something not allowed.

Ex: – We **mustn't** stay up late when we are sick.**Unit 3 Suitcase Stories****Planned Future (Am - Is - Are + going to)**

- We use “going to” when we talk about something we plan to do in the future.

AffirmativeSubject + **am/is/are** + going to + base verb ...**Ex:** – I **am** going to play with my friends in the park.**Negative**Subject + **am/is/are** + **not** + base verb ...**Ex:** – Laila **is not** going to the picnic.**Yes/No question****Am/Is/Are** + subject + going to + base verb ...?**Ex:** – **Are** they going to make a cake for their mom?**Wh-question**Question word + **am/is/are** + subject + going to + base verb ...?**Ex:** – Where **is** he going to see the movie next weekend?

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Lily's grandmother told her about the pharaohs. ()
2. Lily wants to ride a felucca on the Nile. ()
3. She thinks Luxor and Aswan will be bad. ()
4. She hopes she can build a big sandcastle in Alexandria. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you, you should cover your mouth.
a. cough b. cry c. shout d. speak
2. He play the guitar when he was five.
a. can b. could c. had d. is
3. My sister told me to only the things I really need in my suitcase.
a. pack b. make c. sell d. climb
4. They have to wake up early tomorrow.
a. must b. mustn't c. don't d. doesn't

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

medicine – injured – first – safe – cuts

I'm Adel. I clean the nurse's room every morning, and I always see the big ⁽¹⁾ aid kit on the shelf. The nurse keeps it organized and full of bandages, plasters, and ⁽²⁾ I make sure the room stays clean so she can work quickly if someone is ⁽³⁾ Keeping the school tidy and clean helps everyone stay ⁽⁴⁾

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Amira. I have three children. As a parent, I think hobbies are very important for children. My children love drawing, cycling, and solving puzzles. These activities help them relax after school and stay healthy and full of energy. I remember when they were younger and couldn't draw well, but today they can draw beautiful pictures. Puzzles also teach them problem-solving and patience. I'm happy that hobbies help them grow stronger and smarter. Children need time to enjoy what they love, not only schoolwork, because hobbies help them become confident and creative.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about
a. books b. hobbies c. jobs d. toys
2. The opposite of the underlined word "love" is ".....".
a. hate b. like c. enjoy d. prefer

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What do puzzles ^{teach} the children?

.....

4. What do hobbies help children become?

.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. Am I (goes) to need my sunglasses?
2. Adam (could) speak three languages. He speaks them well.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. feeling – how – you – Sama, – today? – are
.....
2. Great – You – visit – of Giza. – must – the – Pyramids
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. could playing board games count as a hobby
.....
2. the treatment is free for children
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“At the clinic”

(feel – doctor – warm)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 1

Test (2)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Hala takes money from Hospital 57-3-57. ()
2. The hospital helps children who are sick. ()
3. Hala's donations help them get treatment and hope. ()
4. The teamwork between donors, doctors, and nurses makes no difference. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I solve puzzles very fast, but my brother can't.
a. could b. can c. isn't d. couldn't
2. You to wash your hands before eating.
a. have b. has c. must d. mustn't
3. Omar is great at crafting with
a. paper b. food c. books d. water
4. We explored an amazing ancient Egyptian in Luxor yesterday.
a. shopping mall b. river c. desert d. temple

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****teamwork – hobbies – painting – skills – Club**

I'm Hassan. I think the Hobby ⁽¹⁾ is exciting! My friend Youssef can play football. He teaches new ⁽²⁾, and everyone enjoys playing together. It's fun to learn ⁽³⁾ and practice sports with friends. The club makes exercise enjoyable, and it shows that ⁽⁴⁾ can bring students closer while keeping them active.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Amir. I went camping in Wadi El Gemal last year, and it was amazing. Hiking on the trails, learning about desert plants, and seeing birds up close were fun. Sitting by the campfire and telling stories made the trip special. I'm excited for the younger students going next weekend. I hope they follow the rules and keep the campsite clean. This trip will be full of adventure, friendship, and learning. I can't wait to hear about their experiences and see the photos they take.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "special" means ".....".
a. normal b. ordinary c. unusual d. boring
- Amir is excited for the students going next weekend.
a. angry b. excited c. sad d. younger

(B) Answer the following questions:

- What activities did Amir enjoy during the trip?
.....

- What is the text mainly about?
.....

- What made the trip special?
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. We (must) touch our eyes with dirty hands.
2. Laila (am) going to visit her friends this weekend.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. stay safe – The – at school. – helps – aid kit – everyone – first

2. Do – to try – exciting? – want – you – something

7 Punctuate the following:

1. I really want to see qaitbay Citadel
2. what makes you happy in your free time

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“Your favorite hobby”

(play – skills – share)

Review 1

Test (3)

(A) Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



1. Asmaa wants to try something exciting and new. ()
2. Starting a hobby is hard. ()
3. She thinks first about what she loves. ()
4. She enjoys her progress and shares it with family or friends. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She has a She can't speak now.
a. cold b. sore throat c. stomachache d. broken leg
2. Is he to drive his car?
a. goes b. went c. going d. go
3. You go to the doctor when you feel sick.
a. must b. mustn't c. can't d. shouldn't
4. Wear a helmet when you go
a. running b. walking c. swimming d. cycling

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****Egypt – felucca – Pyramids – sea – Egyptian**

My name is Lama. I invited my friend Sally to visit my country, ⁽¹⁾ She is from England. I want to take her to the Great ⁽²⁾ of Giza because they are so big and old. I also want to go on a ⁽³⁾ on the Nile River with her. I want her to try ⁽⁴⁾ food, and I'm sure she will love it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hospital 57-3-57 in Cairo helps children who are sick. The hospital is very big and famous. All treatment is free because people in Egypt donate money to it. When children come, a friendly receptionist helps them. Nurses take them for tests, and doctors explain what treatment they need. The hospital has playrooms, libraries, and other fun places so children enjoy. Teachers also help them study while they are in the hospital. This hospital shows that donations, care, and teamwork can help every child get better and stay healthy.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "enjoy" is "to be".
a. bored b. annoyed c. sad d. happy
2. All treatment is free because people donate
a. money b. toys c. clothes d. food

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does the hospital show?

.....

4. Who helps children study while they are in the hospital?

.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refers to?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. (Is) they going to play football?
2. He could (reading) a story when he was six.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. a – I – fever – and – have – a headache.

2. our – Do – bus – have – you – tickets?

7 Punctuate the following:

1. did you enjoy visiting cairo last month?

2. i love cycling and skating in the park

8 Write a narrative text of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“A special trip”

(ticket – pack – Alexandria)

4 Unit

Jobs in the Animal Kingdom



Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Describe animal jobs using simple sentences
- Take turns asking and answering questions about animals
- Express opinions on appreciating and protecting animal helpers

- وصف وظائف الحيوانات باستخدام جُمْل بسيطة
- تبادل الأدوار في طرح الأسئلة والإجابة عنها حول الحيوانات
- التعبير عن آراء حول تقدير وحماية الحيوانات المساعدة

Listening

- Recognize key words about animal helpers
- Identify the gist in short dialogs about animals and their jobs
- Identify specific details in short dialogs about animals and their jobs

- التعرف على كلمات رئيسية متعلقة بالحيوانات المساعدة
- تحديد الفكرة الأساسية في محادثات قصيرة عن الحيوانات ووظائفها
- تحديد تفاصيل محددة في محادثات قصيرة عن الحيوانات ووظائفها

Reading

- Identify the main idea of a text about animal jobs
- Identify specific details of short informational texts about animal jobs

- تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية لنص عن وظائف الحيوانات

- Guess the meaning of unknown words based on context
- Use the Present Simple and Present Continuous accurately

- تحديد تفاصيل محددة لنصوص معلوماتية قصيرة عن وظائف الحيوانات
- تخمين معنى الكلمات غير المعروفة اعتمادًا على سياق
- استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر بدقة

Writing

- Write a short descriptive paragraph about animal helpers using unit vocabulary

- كتابة فقرة وصفية قصيرة عن الحيوانات المساعدة باستخدام مفردات الوحدة

- Use Present Simple to describe habits and jobs

- استخدم المضارع البسيط لوصف العادات والوظائف

- Use Present Continuous for actions happening now

- استخدم المضارع المستمر للأفعال التي تحدث الآن

- Design a poster showing how to appreciate and protect animal helpers

- تصميم ملصق يوضح كيفية تقدير وحماية الحيوانات المساعدة

Lesson 1 How Animals Help Us

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:



New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة



police dogs

كلاب بوليسية



guide dogs

كلاب مرشدة



dolphins

دلافين



horses

خيول

Extra Vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

animals	الحيوانات	jobs	وظائف/أعمال	blind people	المكفوفون
criminals	مجرمون	countries	بلاد	officers	ضباط

Adjectives

الصفات

brave	شجاع	calm	هادئ	careful	حذر
rescue	منقذ	scared	خائف	lost	ضائع

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
مضارع	ماضي	مضارع	ماضي
help	helped	find	found
walk	walked	catch	caught
يساعد		يجد	
يمشي		يمسك	

Important expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

cross streets	تعبّر الشوارع	That's amazing!	هذا مذهل!
move around	يتحرك/يتنقل	far away	مسافة بعيدة
in danger	في خطر	much better	تحسن كبير
get hurt	يتعرض للأذى		



Definitions

تعريفات

police dogs كلاب بوليسية	Brave, smart animals that help police find lost people and catch criminals using their strong sense of smell. حيوانات شجاعة، وذكية تساعد الشرطة في العثور على الأشخاص المفقودين والقبض على المجرمين باستخدام حاسة الشم القوية لديها.
dolphins دلافين	Rescue animals that help people who are in danger in the sea. حيوانات الإنقاذ التي تساعد الأشخاص المعرضين للخطر في البحر.
horses خيول	Animals that help people feel calm and happy, especially when they are sad or scared. حيوانات تساعد الإنسان على الشعور بالهدوء والسعادة، خاصةً عندما يكون حزينًا أو خائفًا.
guide dogs كلاب مرشدة	Calm, careful animals that help blind people walk safely, cross streets, and move around without getting hurt. حيوانات هادئة وحذرة تساعد المكفوفين على المشي بأمان، عبور الشوارع، والتنقل دون التعرض للأذى.



(Conversation) main points

النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة



- Police dogs help officers find lost people and catch criminals.
تساعد الكلاب البوليسية الضباط في العثور على الأشخاص المفقودين والقبض على المجرمين.
- Guide dogs help blind people walk safely and move around without getting hurt.
تساعد الكلاب المرشدة المكفوفين على المشي بأمان والتنقل دون التعرض للأذى.
- Horses make people feel calm and help them feel better.
الخيول تجعل الناس يشعرون بالهدوء وتساعدهم على الشعور بالتحسن.
- Rescue dolphins save people who are in danger in the sea.
تنقذ دلافين الإنقاذ الأشخاص المعرضين للخطر في البحر.

Conversation



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:



Teacher

1 Did you know that some animals have real jobs, just like people do?
هل كنت تعلم أن بعض الحيوانات لديها وظائف حقيقية، تمامًا كما يفعل الناس؟

2 Really? What kind of jobs do they do? حقًا؟ ما نوع الوظائف التي يقومون به؟



Student



- 3 Well, police dogs are very brave and smart. They help officers find lost people and catch criminals, using their strong noses to smell things from far away.

حسنًا، الكلاب البوليسية شجاعة وذكية جدًا. إنها تساعد الضباط في العثور على الأشخاص المفقودين والقبض على المجرمين، باستخدام أنوفها القوية لشم الأشياء من مسافة بعيدة.

4

That's amazing! Do other dogs have jobs too?

هذا مذهل! هل للكلاب الأخرى وظائف أيضًا؟



- 5 Yes, some guide dogs are for blind people. They help them walk safely, cross streets, and move around without getting hurt. They are very calm and careful.

نعم، بعض الكلاب المرشدة مخصصة للمكفوفين. تساعدهم على المشي بأمان، عبور الشوارع، والتنقل دون أن يتعرضوا للآذى. إنها هادئة وحذرة جدًا.

6

What about other animals?

ماذا عن الحيوانات الأخرى؟



- 7 Horses help people feel calm and happy. Spending time with them can make someone who is sad or scared feel much better.

تساعد الخيول الناس على الشعور بالهدوء والسعادة. قضاء الوقت معها يمكن أن يجعل الشخص الحزين أو الخائف يشعر بتحسن كبير.

8

Are there any animals that help in the water?

هل هناك أي حيوانات تساعد في الماء؟



- 9 Yes, in some countries, rescue dolphins help people who are in danger in the sea. These animals show us that helping others is a very special job.

نعم، في بعض البلاد، تساعد دلافين الإنقاذ الأشخاص المعرضين للخطر في البحر. تُظهر لنا هذه الحيوانات أن مساعدة الآخرين وظيفة مميزة جدًا.



Play Audio

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False: استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

- 1 Cats can help people feel calm and happy. ()
- 2 Some cats stay with young people who live alone. ()
- 3 Cats can't feel when someone is sad or scared. ()
- 4 Spending time with a sweet cat can help people. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The police worked hard to find the who stole the money.
a. noses b. jobs c. animals d. criminals
- 2 Emad studies in a special program for people because he can't see.
a. careful b. lost c. blind d. dangerous
- 3 The firefighter was and saved the child from the fire.
a. scared b. sad c. lost d. brave
- 4 Children should look both ways before they streets.
a. move b. cross c. catch d. tell
- 5 dolphins help people who are in danger in the sea.
a. Scary b. Rescue c. Hurt d. Small
- 6 The worked together to keep the city safe from criminals.
a. officers b. pilots c. engineers d. doctors
- 7 Amina should wear a helmet to avoid getting
a. special b. hurt c. smart d. bored
- 8 help people feel calm and happy, especially when they are sad or scared.
a. Sharks b. Crocodiles c. Lions d. Horses

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

jobs – noses – follow – helpers – lost

Police dogs are trained to help officers keep people safe. They have strong ⁽¹⁾ that can smell things from far away. These smart and brave animals help find ⁽²⁾ people and catch criminals. Police dogs work carefully and ⁽³⁾ the rules. Many officers say their dogs are good ⁽⁴⁾ and very special.

2 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جُملاً:

1 very – Helping – special – is – job. – others – a

.....

2 any – in – that – Are – animals – there – water? – help

.....

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 guide dogs help blind people walk

.....

2 what about other animals, Mr. ahmed?

.....

4 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

“Dolphins”

(in danger – sea – rescue)

.....

Lesson 2

Amazing Helpers

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



water buffalo
جاموس الماء



donkey
حمار



pigeon
حمامة زاجلة



falcon
صقر



gecko
وزغة/بُزْص



scarab beetle
خنفساء الجعران

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

ploughs	محاريث	dates	تمر	soil	تربة
fields	حقول	routes	طرق/مسارات	roles	أدوار
farms	مزارع	messengers	رُسل	containers	أوعية/حاويات
planting	الزراعة	insects	حشرات	supplies	إمدادات
crops	محاصيل	hunting	الصيد	notes	ملاحظات
loads	أحمال	sky	سما	letters	رسائل/خطابات
villages	قرى	waste	نفايات	walls	جدران
markets	أسواق	rats	فئران	ways	طرق

Adjectives الصفات

strong	قوي	ripe	ناضج	special	خاص/مميز
heavy	ثقيل	high	عالٍ	active	نشط
narrow	ضيق	useful	مفيد		



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
prepare يُعدّ / يجهز	prepared	see يرى	saw
carry يحمل	carried	eat يأكل	ate
transport ينقل	transported	know يعرف	knew
climb يتسلق	climbed		
hunt يصطاد	hunted		
damage يتلف	damaged		
pull يجزّ / يسحب	pulled		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

daily lives حياتنا اليومية	break down يفتت
look for يبحث عن	during the evening خلال المساء
work together يعملون معًا	flying over يطير فوق

Definitions

تعريفات

falcon صقر	a fast bird that hunts animals in fields طائر سريع يصطاد الحيوانات في الحقول
scarab beetle خنفساء الجعران	an insect that helps make soil better for plants حشرة تساعد على جعل التربة أفضل للنباتات
donkey حمار	a hardworking animal that carries heavy loads حيوان مجتهد يحمل أحمالًا ثقيلة
gecko وزغة / بُزّ	a small lizard that eats insects inside houses سحلية صغيرة تأكل الحشرات داخل المنازل
pigeon حمامة زاجلة	a bird that can find its way home from far away طائر يستطيع إيجاد طريقه إلى المنزل من مسافة بعيدة
water buffalo جاموس الماء	a strong animal that pulls ploughs on farms حيوان قوي يجزّ المحارث في المزارع

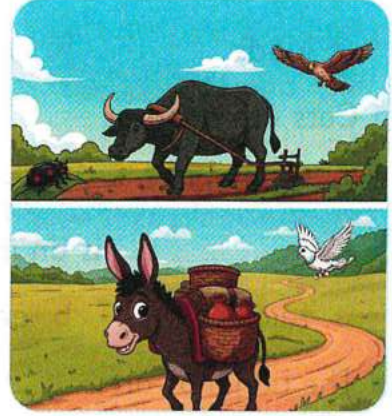


Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Animal Helpers الحيوانات المساعدة

In Egypt, many animals work hard to help people in their daily lives. On farms, strong water buffaloes pull ploughs through the fields. Right now, a farmer is working with his water buffalo to prepare the soil for planting crops. Donkeys carry heavy loads through villages and to markets. They transport crops, water containers, and supplies through narrow streets. At this moment, a donkey is probably



walking to the market with baskets full of ripe dates. The donkeys know their routes very well. Pigeons have an important job as messengers. They carry notes and letters between different places. Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals that damage crops. You might see a falcon flying over a field, looking for rats to catch. These birds fly high in the sky. In homes, geckos climb on walls and eat insects. They are most active during the evening. Scarab beetles work in the soil. They break down waste and help make the earth better for growing plants. All these animals – water buffaloes, donkeys, pigeons, falcons, geckos, and scarab beetles – play special roles in our life. They show how people and animals can work together and help each other in many useful ways.

في مصر، يعمل العديد من الحيوانات بجد لمساعدة الناس في حياتهم اليومية. في المزارع، تجرّ جواميس الماء القوية المحارث غُبر الحقول. في الوقت الحالي، يعمل مُزارع مع جاموسه المائي لإعداد التربة لزراعة المحاصيل. تحمل الحمير أحمالاً ثقيلة غُبر القرى وإلى الأسواق. إنها تنقل المحاصيل وأوعية المياه، والإمدادات غُبر الشوارع الضيقة. في هذه اللحظة، ربما يسير حمار إلى السوق وهو يحمل سلالاً مليئة بالتمر الناضج. الحمير تعرف طرقها جيداً. الحمام الزاجل له وظيفة مهمة كُرسل، يحمل الملاحظات والرسائل بين أماكن مختلفة. تساعد الصقور المُزارعين بصيد الحيوانات الصغيرة التي تتلف المحاصيل. قد ترى صقراً يطير فوق حقل، بحثاً عن فئران لاصطيادها. تطير هذه الطيور عالياً في السماء. في المنازل، يتسلق الوزغ (البُزّص) الجدران ويأكل الحشرات. إنه أكثر نشاطاً خلال المساء. تعمل خنافس الجعران في التربة. إنها تفتت النفايات وتساعد على جعل الأرض أفضل لزراعة النباتات. جميع هذه الحيوانات - جاموس الماء، الحمير، الحمام الزاجل، الصقور، الوزغ (الأبراص)، وخنافس الجعران - تلعب أدواراً مميزة في حياتنا. إنها تُظهر كيف يمكن للناس والحيوانات العمل معاً ومساعدة بعضهم بعضاً بعدة طرق مفيدة.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The farmer uses to prepare the soil for planting.
a. loads b. wastes c. walls d. ploughs
- 2 Cats are good at rats during the evening.
a. climbing b. preparing c. hunting d. flying
- 3 A is an insect that helps make the soil better for plants.
a. falcon b. gecko c. scarab beetle d. donkey
- 4 The bananas are, so we can eat them now.
a. ripe b. awful c. dirty d. narrow

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

useful – geckos – fields – clean – dolphins

Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals that damage crops. You might see a falcon flying high over ⁽¹⁾, looking for rats to catch. In many homes, ⁽²⁾ climb walls and eat insects like mosquitoes and flies. They are most active during the evening and help keep houses ⁽³⁾ and safe from insects. Both animals are ⁽⁴⁾ helpers.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 How do donkeys help people?
.....
- 2 Why do farmers use falcons in their fields?
.....
- 3 What is the importance of scarab beetles?
.....



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage

الاستخدام

- We use the "Present Simple" to talk about things that are always true (facts), or that happen regularly (jobs/habits).
- نستخدم «المضارع البسيط» للتحدث عن الأشياء التي تكون دائماً صحيحة (الحقائق)، أو التي تحدث بانتظام (الوظائف/العادات).

Form

التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

Negative النفي

Question الاستفهام

1. Affirmative



I, You, We, They,
Plural noun (اسم جمع)

He, She, It,
Singular noun (اسم مفرد)

verb (infinitive) ...
(مصدر الفعل)

+

verb (infinitive) +
-s/-es/-ies ...

-s

لمعظم الأفعال.

Ex: - visit → visits

-es

للأفعال المنتهية بـ

(s-ss-sh-ch-x-o)

Ex: - brush → brushes

-ies

للأفعال المنتهية بـ

(حرف ساكن + y)

Ex: - fly → flies

Ex: - A falcon **hunts** small animals. (Fact)



- Donkeys **carry** things every day. (Habit/Job)



- Water buffaloes **pull** ploughs. (Job)



2. Negative



I, You, We, They,
Plural noun

He, She, It,
Singular noun

do not (don't)

+

does not (doesn't)

+

verb
(infinitive) ...



Ex: – A pigeon **doesn't** carry letters in most places today.



– Falcons **don't** hunt at night.



Yes/No question السؤال بـ (هل)

3. Question

?

Do

I, you, we, they, plural noun

Does

he, she, it, singular noun

verb

(infinitive) ...?

Ex: Do farmers use donkeys for transportation?

– Yes, they **do**.



Ex: Does a gecko eat insects?

– Yes, it **does**.



Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Question word
(كلمة الاستفهام)

do

I, you, we, they, plural noun

does

he, she, it, singular noun

verb

(infinitive) ...?

Ex: – What **do** donkeys carry?

They **carry** heavy loads.



Ex: – What **does** a scarab beetle **do**?

It **helps** make the earth better for growing plants.



Note

- Verb "to have" has (2) forms in the present simple tense: (has) with he, she, it, or a singular noun; and (have) with I, you, we, they, or a plural noun.

• الفعل "have" بمعنى «يملك/عنده» له شكلان في زمن المضارع البسيط: (has) مع he, she, it أو اسم مفرد و (have) مع I, you, we, they أو اسم جمع.

Ex: – She has a guide dog.

– I have a cow on my farm.

- Verb "to be" has (3) forms in the present simple tense: (am) with I, (is) with he, she, it, or a singular noun, and (are) with you, we, they, or a plural noun.

• الفعل "be" له (3) أشكال في زمن المضارع البسيط: (am) مع I, (is) مع he, she, it أو اسم مفرد و (are) مع you, we, they أو اسم جمع.

Ex: – A falcon is very fast.

– Geckos are helpful animals.

**Key words** الكلمات الدالة

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------|--------|
| • every (day) | كل (يوم) | • usually | عادةً |
| • always | دائمًا | • often | غالبًا |
| • on (Mondays) | في (أيام الإثنين) | • never | أبدًا |

Tryout**Read and correct the underlined mistakes:**

اقرأ وصحح الأخطاء التي تحتها خط:

- 1 The library open at nine o'clock. (.....)
- 2 I doesn't drink coffee in the morning. (.....)
- 3 Does the shop closes early on Fridays? (.....)
- 4 The bus arrived at 7:30 every morning. (.....)

4. arrives

3. close

2. don't

1. opens

Answers:**Read, look, and notice:**

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

**Language in use****Present Continuous Tense** زمن المضارع المستمر**Usage****الاستخدام**

- We use the "Present Continuous" to talk about actions that are happening at this moment.

• نستخدم "المضارع المستمر" للتحدث عن الأفعال التي تحدث في هذه اللحظة.

Form**التكوين****Affirmative** الإثبات**Negative** النفي**Question** الاستفهام**I****Affirmative**

✓

I

am

He, She, It, Singular noun (اسم مفرد)

is

You, We, They, Plural noun (اسم جمع)

are

+ verb + -ing ...



Ex: – I **am** working on the farm right now.



– The donkey **is** carrying a heavy load at the moment.



– The farmers **are** planting seeds today.



Spelling Rules قواعد التهجئة

- If a verb ends in (-e), we delete the (-e) and add (-ing).

• إذا انتهى فعل بحرف (-e)، فإننا نحذف الحرف ونضيف (-ing).

Ex: – make → making

- If a verb ends in (a vowel + a consonant), we double the consonant before we add (-ing).

• إذا انتهى فعل بـ (حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن)، فإننا نضاعف الحرف الساكن قبل أن نضيف (-ing).

Ex: – swim → swimming

2

Negative

X

I	→	am	} →	not +	verb + -ing ...
He, She, It, Singular noun	→	is			
You, We, They, Plural noun	→	are			

Ex: – I'm **not** planting the seeds today.



– The water buffalo **isn't** pulling the plough now; it is resting.



– The pigeons **aren't** flying at the moment; they are in their cage.



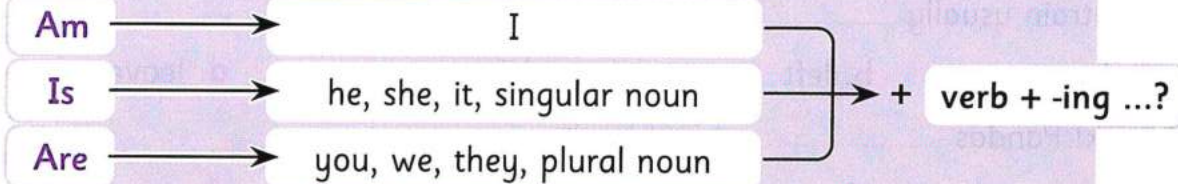


3

Question

?

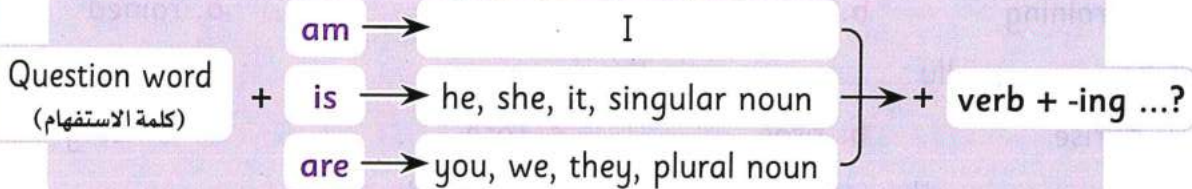
Yes/No question (السؤال بـ (هل)



Ex: Is the falcon hunting?

– Yes, it **is**.– No, it **isn't**.

Wh-question (السؤال بأداة الاستفهام)

Ex: – What **is** the donkey **carrying** right now?It's **carrying** heavy loads.

Key words (الكلمات الدالة)

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| • now/right now | • الآن/الوقت الحالي | • at the moment | في هذه اللحظة (الوقت الحالي) |
| • Look! | انظروا | • Listen! | استمع! |
| • today | اليوم | | |

Tryout



Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحح الأخطاء التي تحتها خط:

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1 I <u>read</u> a new book right now. | (.....) |
| 2 He <u>doesn't play</u> football right now. | (.....) |
| 3 <u>Am</u> you waiting for the bus? | (.....) |
| 4 They <u>isn't</u> working on the project today. | (.....) |

4. aren't

3. Are

2. isn't playing

1. am reading

Answers:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The train usually at 7 o'clock every morning.
a. leave b. left c. leaving d. leaves
- 2 Look! Pandas bamboo.
a. eat b. eats c. are eating d. ate
- 3 Does your mom cakes every Friday?
a. making b. made c. make d. makes
- 4 It is heavily at the moment.
a. raining b. rains c. rain d. rained
- 5 The sun usually in the east.
a. rise b. rises c. rose d. is rising
- 6 the workers building a new house?
a. Am b. Do c. Are d. Is
- 7 When does the owl hunt? – It at night.
a. hunt b. hunts c. hunting d. hunted
- 8 Listen! The parrot loudly right now.
a. talk b. talks c. is talking d. talked

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 The children (studying) English every day.
- 2 The lion (not hunt) in the morning.
- 3 The teacher (explained) the lesson at the moment.
- 4 Turtles don't (moves) fast on land.
- 5 Our bus (arriving) at 8 a.m. every day.
- 6 Ahmed (not watch) TV now; he is reading.
- 7 Look! What is Sara (do) now?
- 8 The giraffe (eating) leaves from tall trees.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

In many places around the world, animals help people in surprising ways. In the desert, camels carry food and people across long, sandy routes where cars can't go. On farms, goats help farmers by eating dry plants. This helps keep the land clean and safe from fires. In cities, police dogs help officers by finding lost people and catching criminals. At the beach, seabirds show fishermen when fish swim near the surface. These animals are very helpful and play an important role. They make people's lives easier every day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 In the _____, camels carry food and people.
a. farm b. desert c. city d. town
- 2 The opposite of the underlined word "dry" is _____.
a. hot b. clean c. wet d. hard

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What is the general idea of the text?
.....
- 4 Which animal helps keep the land safe from fires?
.....
- 5 What animals are mentioned in the text?
.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 The chef (cooked) a new dish right now.
- 2 What (am) Sami usually eat for lunch?

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- In egypt, many animals work hard

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



cows

أبقار



sheep

غنم



guard dogs

كلاب الحراسة

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

carts	عربات	sweaters	سترات صوفية	grain	حبوب
blankets	بطاطين/أغطية	wool	صوف	barn	حظيرة

Adjectives الصفات

fresh	طازج	warm	دافئ	safe	سلامة/آمن
-------	------	------	------	------	-----------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
visit يزور	visited	grow ينمو	grew
explain يفسر	explained	cut يقطع	cut

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

watch over	يراقب/يحرس	milk a cow	يحبب بقرة
run around	يجري حول	Once a year,	مرة واحدة في السنة،

Definitions تعريفات

farmer	مزارع	a person who grows food and raises animals	شخص يزرع الطعام ويربّي الحيوانات
field	حقل	an area of land with grass for animals	منطقة من الأرض بها عشب للحيوانات
sheep	غنم	a farm animal that gives us thick wool to make clothes	حيوان مزرعة يعطينا صوفًا كثيفًا لنصنع الملابس
guard dog	كلب حراسة	an animal that protects others	حيوان يحمي الآخرين



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

A Day on the Farm

يوم في المزرعة



Omar and his family are visiting his uncle's farm today. They see many animal helpers working hard. The cows are in the field. "Look! The farmer is milking a cow now," says Omar happily. Cows give us fresh milk every day for drinking and making cheese. They walk to another field where sheep are eating grass. The sheep have thick, warm wool that grows all year. Once a year, workers carefully cut the wool to make sweaters and blankets. A smart dog is watching over the sheep carefully. The dog's job is to guard the sheep. Right now, the dog is running around the sheep to keep them safe. Near the barn, chickens lay eggs every morning for breakfast. The family sees a cat sleeping in the sun. The cat helps by catching mice that might eat the grain. Omar's uncle explains, "We take good care of all our animals, and they take care of us too." He shows Omar how the horses help pull carts around the farm. Donkeys are strong and can carry heavy loads. "We must always be kind to our animal helpers," the uncle says gently. Omar learns that farm animals are hard workers who help people in many ways.

يزور عُمر وعائلته مزرعة عمّه اليوم. يرون العديد من الحيوانات المساعدة تعمل بجدّ. الأبقار في الحقل. قال عُمر بسعادة: «انظروا! المزارع يحلب بقرة الآن». تُعطينا الأبقار حليبًا طازجًا كل يوم للشرب ولصنع الجبن. يسيرون إلى حقل آخر حيث تأكل الغنم العشب. للغنم صوف كثيف، ودافئ ينمو طوال العام. مرة واحدة في السنة، يقص العمال الصوف بعناية لصنع سترات صوفية وبطاطين. كلب ذكي يراقب الغنم بعناية. وظيفته هي حراسة الغنم. في الوقت الحالي، يجري الكلب حول الغنم ليحافظ على سلامتها. بالقرب من الحظيرة، تضع الدجاجات بيضًا كل صباح لوجبة الإفطار. ترى العائلة قطة تنام تحت أشعة الشمس. تساعد القطة في اصطیاد الفئران التي قد تأكل الحبوب. يشرح عمّ عُمر: «نعتني بجميع حيواناتنا جيدًا، وهي تعتني بنا أيضًا». ويُرِي عُمر كيف تساعد الخيول في جرّ العربات حول المزرعة. الحمير قوية وتستطيع حمل أحمال ثقيلة. يقول العمّ بلطف: «يجب علينا دائمًا أن نكون لطفاء مع حيواناتنا المساعدة». يتعلّم عُمر أن حيوانات المزرعة تعمل بجدّ، وتساعد الناس بطرق عديدة.

Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- 1 Omar sees a farmer milking a cow when he visits the farm. ()
- 2 Sheep give people milk that is used to make cheese. ()
- 3 The guard dog is running around the sheep to keep them safe. ()

3. (✓)

2. (X)

1. (✓)

Answers:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The farmer is the cow now. It gives fresh milk every day.
a. sleeping b. drinking c. milking d. playing
- 2 My grandma has a soft It's made from sheep's wool.
a. sweater b. barn c. grass d. cart
- 3 On my uncle's farm, chickens eggs every morning.
a. pull b. lay c. carry d. cut
- 4 The mice ate all the that the farmer stored.
a. grain b. carts c. fields d. workers

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

safe – sheep – sleeps – runs – watch over

The smart farm dog works hard every day. Early in the morning, it ⁽¹⁾ around the field to ⁽²⁾ the sheep. It runs quickly to keep them ⁽³⁾ from danger. The dog listens to the farmer's sound and follows him. Everyone on the farm trusts the dog because it helps protect the ⁽⁴⁾

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 What did Omar learn about farm animals?

.....

- 2 Where does Omar's family see the chickens laying eggs?

.....

- 3 What does Omar's uncle say about animals?

.....

B

Word Building Skills

 Listen and repeat:

استمع وردّد:



Words with the suffixes: -er / -or / -ist

الكلمات التي تحتوي على اللواحق: -er / -or / -ist

 Remember

- A suffix is a group of letters added to the end of a word to change its meaning or make a new word. اللاحقة هي مجموعة من الحروف المضافة إلى نهاية الكلمة لتغيير معناها أو تكوين كلمة جديدة.

- er:** Sounds like /ər/ at the end.

• **-er:** تُنطق مثل /ər/ في النهاية.

Ex: – Farm + **-er** → farmer مُزارع (Say “farm” strong, “-er” soft)

- or:** Also sounds like /ər/. The strong part is before “-or.”

• **-or:** تُنطق أيضًا مثل /ər/. يأتي الجزء المُشدّد قبل “-or.”

Ex: – visit + **-or** → visitor زائر (Say “visit” strong, “-or” soft)

- ist:** Sounds like /ɪst/ at the end.

• **-ist:** تُنطق مثل /ɪst/ في النهاية.

Ex: – special + **-ist** → specialist متخصص (Say “spe” strong, “-cial-ist” quick)

Stress in Words التشديد في الكلمات

- Stress is the part of the word we say louder and stronger.

• التشديد هو جزء من الكلمة نقوله بصوت أعلى وأقوى.

تشير هذه الدائرة ● إلى أن المقطع فوقها، والذي تحته خط، مشدد (stressed).

وتشير هذه الدائرة ● إلى أن المقطع فوقها غير مشدد (unstressed).

- In two-syllable nouns, stress is usually on the first syllable. **Ex:** – farm-er

• في الأسماء المكونة من مقطعين صوتيين، يكون الضغط عادةً على المقطع الصوتي الأول.

- In some three-syllable nouns, stress is on the first syllable. **Ex:** – spe-cial-ist

• في بعض الأسماء المكونة من ثلاثة مقاطع صوتية، يكون التشديد على المقطع الصوتي الأول.

– vis-it-or

Extra Words

كلمات إضافية

Two-syllable words

doctor	طبيب	doc-tor
helper	مساعد	help-er

Three-syllable words

scientist	عالم	sci-en-tist
inventor	مخترع	in-ven-tor

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

On a farm, many animals help people every day. In the morning, cows give fresh milk that families can drink. Nearby, sheep eat grass together, and their wool grows thick. Workers cut the wool to make warm clothes. Chickens walk near the barn and lay eggs for breakfast. Horses pull small carts to move things around the farm. Even the cat helps by catching mice. Each animal has a small job, and together they make the farm a happy and busy place.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The text is about animals.
a. farm b. forest c. desert d. sea
- 2 The opposite of the underlined word "thick" is
a. warm b. tall c. thin d. narrow

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What do cows give?

.....

- 4 What does the underlined word "their" refer to?

.....

- 5 What can we use to make warm clothes?

.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 Do cats (catching) mice every day?
- 2 Look! The farmer (milks) a cow now.

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

narrator	راوي	food	طعام	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
egret	طائر أبو قردان	feathers	ريش	crops	محاصيل
beak	منقار	control	سيطرة	flies	ذباب
hoppers	جراد	wildlife	الحياة البرية	rice plants	نباتات الأرز
backs	ظهور (جمع ظهر)	documentary	فيلم وثائقي	insects	حشرات

Adjectives الصفات

sharp	حاد	long	طويل	natural	طبيعي
healthy	صحي	different	مختلف	beautiful	جميل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
provide يوفر/يمد	provided	fly يطير	flew
harm تضر/تضرر	harmed	make يصنع/يجعل	made
need يحتاج	needed	find يجد	found
bother يزعج	bothered	say يقول	said
appreciate يقدر	appreciated		
raid ينقض/يهاجم بسرعة	raided		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

walk through	يمشي عبر	On the screen,	على الشاشة،
work alongside	يعمل جنباً إلى جنب	better view	رؤية أفضل
easy to spot	سهل رؤيته	doesn't mind	لا يمانع
in a single day	في يوم واحد	use as many	استخدم الكثير من
stand on	يقف فوق	healthier for	أكثر صحة لـ



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The Farmer's Feathered Friend صديق المزارع ذو الريش

I am watching a wildlife documentary about animal helpers right now. The narrator says that egrets help farmers by eating insects that harm crops. On the screen, a white egret is standing in a field. Suddenly, the egret raids quickly with its sharp beak. It is catching hoppers that eat the rice plants. Egrets have long legs that help them walk through water. These birds often work alongside water buffaloes in the fields. They sometimes stand on the buffaloes' backs to get a better view. The egret eats flies that bother the buffalo, and the buffalo doesn't mind. Farmers don't need to use as many chemicals because of these birds. This makes the food healthier for people to eat. Egrets can eat hundreds of insects in a single day. They fly to different fields to find their food. Their white feathers make them easy to spot against the green plants. Farmers appreciate these beautiful birds because they provide natural insect control.



أنا أشاهد الآن فيلمًا وثائقيًا عن الحياة البرية للحيوانات المساعدة. يقول الراوي إن طيور أبو قردان تساعد المزارعين بأكل الحشرات التي تلتف المحاصيل. على الشاشة، يقف طائر أبو قردان أبيض في حقل. فجأة، ينقض طائر أبو قردان بسرعة بمنقاره الحاد. إنه يلتقط الجراد الذي يأكل نباتات الأرز. طيور أبو قردان لها أرجل طويلة تساعد على المشي عبر الماء. هذه الطيور غالبًا ما تعمل جنبًا إلى جنب مع جاموس الماء في الحقول. تقف أحيانًا فوق ظهور الجاموس لتحصل على رؤية أفضل. يأكل طائر أبو قردان الذباب الذي يزعج الجاموس، والجاموس لا يمانع. لا يحتاج المزارعون إلى استخدام الكثير من المواد الكيميائية بسبب هذه الطيور. مما يجعل الطعام أكثر صحة للناس للأكل. طيور أبو قردان يمكن أن تأكل مئات من الحشرات في يوم واحد. تطير إلى حقول مختلفة لتجد طعامها. ريشها الأبيض يجعلها سهلة الرؤية على النباتات الخضراء. يُقدّر المزارعون هذه الطيور الجميلة لأنها تُوفّر مكافحة طبيعية للحشرات.



Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for writing a descriptive paragraph about an animal helper

نصائح كتابة فقرة وصفية عن حيوان مساعد



- Choose a topic: Pick an animal helper. اختر موضوعًا: اختر حيوانًا مساعدًا.
Ex: The farmer's feathered friend.
- Use strong adjectives: sharp, patient, beautiful, natural. استخدم صفات قوية: حاد، صبور، جميل، طبيعي.
- Show, don't tell: Instead of "The egret is helpful," write "The egret is catching harmful insects in the rice field." أظهر، لا تخبر: بدلاً من «طائر أبو قردان مساعد»، اكتب «طائر أبو قردان يصطاد الحشرات الضارة في حقول الأرز».
- Use the correct tense. استخدم الزمن الصحيح.
- Use Present Simple for habits/jobs. استخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للعادات/الوظائف.
Ex: Egrets sometimes stand on the buffaloes' backs.
- Use Present Continuous for what is happening now. استخدم زمن المضارع المستمر لما يحدث الآن.
Ex: The egret is standing in a field.
- Organize your ideas: Start with what you see, describe the job, and finish with your opinion. نظم أفكارك: ابدأ بما تراه، صف الوظيفة، واختتم برأيك.
- Check spelling, grammar, and punctuation mistakes. تحقق من أخطاء التهجئة، اللغوية، وعلامات الترقيم.

Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- 1 Egrets help farmers by eating insects that harm crops. ()
- 2 The egret in the documentary is catching hoppers that eat rice plants. ()
- 3 Egrets never stand on the backs of water buffaloes. ()
- 4 Farmers need to use more chemicals because of egrets. ()
- 5 Egrets can eat hundreds of insects in just one day. ()

5. (✓)

4. (X)

3. (X)

2. (✓)

1. (✓)

Answers:



Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for creating a poster about animal helpers

نصائح لإنشاء ملصق عن الحيوانات المساعدة



- Choose a clear and attractive title.
- Write detailed sentences.
- Glue expressive pictures or drawings.

اختر عنوانًا واضحًا وجذابًا.

اكتب جُملاً مفصّلة.

ألصق صورًا أو رسومات معبرة.

Ex:

Animal Helpers

الحيوانات المساعدة

clear and attractive title

عنوان واضح وجذاب

picture/
drawing

صورة/رسم



The donkey carries heavy loads and helps farmers with their work in the fields.

يحمل الحمار أحمالًا ثقيلة ويساعد المزارعين في عملهم في الحقول.

The water buffalo helps farmers by pulling ploughs through the wet fields to prepare the soil for planting.

يساعد جاموس الماء المزارعين بجَرِّ المحارث عبر الحقول الرطبة لتحضير التربة للزراعة.

detailed
sentence

جُملة مفصّلة



Bees help farmers by carrying pollen from one plant to another.

يساعد النحل المزارعين بنقل حبوب اللقاح من نبات إلى آخر.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The egret quickly to catch insects.
a. sleeps b. paints c. calculates d. raids
- 2 Too many chemicals can the plants.
a. harm b. help c. eat d. fly
- 3 I saw a bird that has white and a beak.
a. screens b. documentaries c. feathers d. fields
- 4 The dog walks the farmer. They always walk together.
a. under b. alongside c. over d. inside

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

back – flies – dirty – plants – healthy

In the rice fields, there is a water buffalo. It moves slowly through the water while a white egret stands on its ⁽¹⁾ The bird eats the ⁽²⁾ that bother the buffalo and the insects that harm the ⁽³⁾ As the buffalo works calmly, the egret helps keep the field ⁽⁴⁾ Farmers appreciate this natural teamwork every day.

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات بالترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جملًا:

- 1 different – Egrets – to – their – to find – food. – fly – fields

- 2 you – see – people? – usually – animals – Do – helping

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- what do egrets do to help farmers

5 Write a descriptive paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة وصفية من أربعين (40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

“Farmer’s friend”

(rice plants – water buffalo – insect control)

Unit 4 Review

Vocabulary

police dogs	كلاب بوليسية	water buffalo	جاموس الماء	wildlife	الحياة البرية
guide dogs	كلاب مرشدة	egret	طائر أبو قردان	hoppers	جراد
dolphins	دلافين	ploughs	محاريث	rice plants	نباتات الأرز
horses	خيول	fields	حقول	flies	ذباب
pigeon	حمامة زاجلة	routes	طرق/مسارات	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
scarab beetle	خنفس الجعران	crops	محاصيل	narrator	راوي
gecko	وزغة/بُرْص	loads	أحمال	beak	منقار
falcon	صقر	wool	صوف	feathers	ريش
guard dogs	كلاب الحراسة	grain	حبوب	blankets	بطاطين/أغطية

Language

Present Simple Tense

- We use the "Present Simple" to talk about things that are always true (facts), or that happen regularly (jobs/habits).

• نستخدم "المضارع البسيط" للتحدث عن الأشياء التي تكون صحيحة دائماً (الحقائق)، أو التي تحدث بانتظام (الوظائف/العادات).

Affirmative



I, You, We, They, Plural noun + **verb (infinitive)** ...
He, She, It, Singular noun + **verb (infinitive) + -s/-es/-ies** ...

- Ex:** – A falcon **hunts** small animals. (Fact).
– Donkeys **carry** things every day. (Habit/Job)

Negative



Subject + **don't/doesn't** + **verb (infinitive)** ...

- Ex:** – A pigeon **doesn't** carry letters in most places today.
– Falcons **don't** hunt at night.

Yes/No question



Do/Does + subject + **verb (infinitive)** ...?

- Ex:** – **Do** farmers use donkeys for transportation?
– **Does** a gecko eat insects?

**Wh-question**Question word + **do/does** + subject + **verb (infinitive)** ...?**Ex:** – What **do** donkeys **carry**?– What **does** a scarab beetle **do**?**Present Continuous Tense**

- We use the “Present Continuous” to talk about actions that are happening at this moment.

• نستخدم "المضارع المستمر" للتحدث عن الأفعال التي تحدث في هذه اللحظة.

Subject + **am/is/are** + **verb + -ing** ...**Affirmative****Ex:** – The donkey **is** **carrying** a heavy load at the moment.The farmers **are** **planting** seeds today.Subject + **am/is/are** + **not (n't)** + **verb + -ing** ...**Negative****Ex:** – The water buffalo **isn't** **pulling** the plough now; it is resting.– The pigeons **aren't** **flying** at the moment; they are in their cage.**Am/Is/Are** + subject + **verb + -ing** ...?**Yes/No question****Ex:** **Is** the falcon **hunting**?– Yes, it **is**.– No, it **isn't**.**Wh-question**Question word + **am/is/are** + subject + **verb + -ing** ...?**Ex:** – What **is** the donkey **carrying** right now?– It's **carrying** heavy loads.



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 How Animals Help Us

- Some animals do important work that helps people.
- Police dogs use their strong noses to find lost people and stop criminals. تقوم بعض الحيوانات بعمل مهم يساعد الناس.
- Guide dogs support blind people by helping them move without danger. تستخدم الكلاب البوليسية أنوفها القوية للعثور على الأشخاص المفقودين وإيقاف المجرمين.
- Horses help people relax and feel much better. تدعم الكلاب المرشدة المكفوفين بمساعدتهم على التنقل دون خطر.
- Rescue dolphins protect people in the ocean and help save those in danger. تساعد الخيول الناس على الاسترخاء والشعور بتحسن كبير.
- تحمي دلافين الإنقاذ الناس في المحيط وتساعد في إنقاذ المعرّضين للخطر.

Lesson 2 Amazing Helpers

- In Egypt, many animals help people with different kinds of work. في مصر، يُساعد العديد من الحيوانات الناس في مختلف أنواع العمل.
- Water buffaloes and donkeys help farmers by pulling ploughs and carrying heavy loads. يساعد جاموس الماء والحمير المزارعين بحزّ المحارث وحمل أحمال ثقيلة.
- Pigeons can carry messages from one place to another. الحمام الزاجل يمكنه حمل الرسائل من مكان إلى آخر.
- Falcons protect crops by hunting small animals. تحمي الصقور المحاصيل بصيد الحيوانات الصغيرة.
- Geckos and scarab beetles help by eating insects and improving the soil. يساعد الوزغ (البُزْص) وخنافس الجعران بأكل الحشرات وتحسين التربة.

Lesson 3 (A) Farm Friends

- Omar visits his uncle's farm and sees many animals helping the farmers. يزور عُمر مزرعة عمّه ويرى العديد من الحيوانات تساعد المزارعين.
- Cows give fresh milk, and sheep give wool for clothes. الأبقار تُنتج حليبًا طازجًا، والغنم تُنتج صوفًا للملابس.
- A smart dog guards the sheep and keeps them safe. كلب ذكي يحرس الغنم ويحافظ على سلامتها.
- Chickens lay eggs, and the cat catches mice near the barn. تضع الدجاجات بيضها، وتصيد القطّة الفئران قرب الحظيرة.

Lessons 4&5 Writing About Animal Helpers/Think and Create: A Poster

- Egrets help farmers by eating insects that hurt the crops. تساعد طيور أبو قردان المزارعين بأكل الحشرات التي تضر بالمحاصيل.
- They use their sharp beaks to catch hoppers and other insects in the fields. تستخدم مناقيرها الحادة لاصطياد الجراد والحشرات الأخرى في الحقول.
- Egrets often walk with water buffaloes and eat the flies that bother them. غالبًا ما تمشي طيور أبو قردان مع جاموس الماء ويأكل الذباب الذي يزعجه.
- These birds reduce the need for chemicals and make food healthier. تقلل هذه الطيور من الحاجة إلى المواد الكيميائية وتجعل الطعام أكثر صحة.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

.....	كلاب مرشدة	.....	هادئ
.....	كلاب بوليسية	.....	خائف
.....	دلافين	.....	شجاع
.....	مجرمون	.....	حذر
.....	مكفوفون	.....	ضائع
.....	ضابط	.....	وظائف/أعمال

Lesson (2)

.....	الصيد	.....	وزغة/بُزْص
.....	طرق/مسارات	.....	محارِث
.....	نفايات	.....	حقول
.....	أسواق	.....	تربة
.....	خنفساء الجعران	.....	حمامة زاجلة
.....	زُسل	.....	جاموس الماء

Lesson (3)

.....	حظيرة	.....	كلاب الحراسة
.....	صوف	.....	أبقار
.....	بطاطين/أعطية	.....	عربة
.....	سترات صوفية	.....	حبوب
.....	سلامة/آمن	.....	غنم

Lessons (4&5)

.....	طائر أبو قردان	.....	ريش
.....	نباتات الأرز	.....	مواد كيميائية
.....	جراد	.....	ذباب
.....	حياة برية	.....	راو



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
help		see	.....
walk		eat	.....
hunt		know	.....
fly		visit	.....
find		explain	.....
catch		grow	.....
prepare		appreciate	.....
carry		bother	.....
transport		cut	.....
damage		say	.....
pull		raid	.....
climb		harm	.....



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Animal helpers"

1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

فكر في كلمات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصرّفها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. animals
2. jobs
3. horses

Verbs

1. catch
2. feel
3. help

Others

1. calm
2. in danger
3. happy

2 Form your sentences.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكملة الجملة)

1. Some animals have real jobs.
2. They help officers catch criminals.
3. Horses help people feel calm and happy.
4. Dolphins help people who are in danger in the sea.

3 Write your paragraph.

اكتب فقرتك.

Some animals have real jobs. Police dogs are very brave. They help officers catch criminals. Horses help people feel calm and happy. Dolphins help people who are in danger in the sea. Animals show us that helping others is a very special job.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"The egrets"

Nouns

1.
2.
3.

Verbs

1.
2.
3.

Others

1.
2.
3.

Your sentences

1.
2.
3.
4.

Your paragraph فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

Guide dogs

Some guide dogs help blind people in their daily lives. They lead them safely, help them cross busy streets, and stop them from getting hurt. These dogs are calm, patient, and very well trained, so people can trust them.



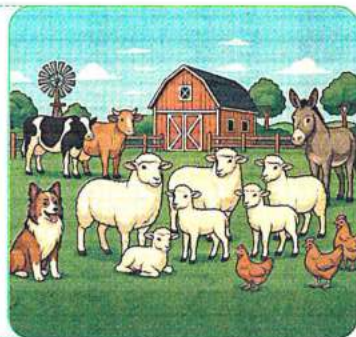
Helpful animals

Falcons are helpful animals on farms. They protect crops by hunting small animals like rats that cause damage. You can often see a falcon flying high in the sky, searching for food as it watches over the fields.



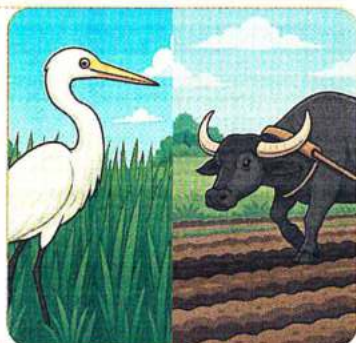
A day on the farm

Omar spends a busy day at the farm. He watches farmers milking cows and sheep eating grass. A dog guards the animals, and chickens lay fresh eggs. Omar enjoys helping the farmers and learns how animals work hard every day. Each animal has an important job on the farm.



Farmer's helpers

Egrets help farmers by eating insects that harm crops. They stand in fields, catch hoppers, and walk through water. Egrets work with water buffaloes and eat flies that bother them. Farmers appreciate these birds because they give natural insect control.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Match the words to their meanings:

صل الكلمات بمعانيها:

- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| 1 falcon | a a small lizard that eats insects inside houses |
| 2 scarab beetle | b a strong animal that pulls ploughs on farms |
| 3 donkey | c a fast bird that hunts animals in fields |
| 4 gecko | d an insect that helps make soil better for plants |
| 5 pigeon | e a hardworking animal that carries heavy loads |
| 6 water buffalo | f a bird that can find its way home from far away |

2 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Water buffaloes (**pull/are pulling**) ploughs on Egyptian farms.
- 2 Look! The pigeon (**carries/is carrying**) a message right now.
- 3 Geckos (**eat/are eating**) insects in homes.
- 4 Right now, the scarab beetle (**works/is working**) in the soil.

3 Choose the correct suffix (-er, -or, -ist) to complete the words:

اختر اللاحقة الصحيحة (-er, -or, -ist) لتكمل الكلمات:

- 1 My uncle is a farm — who plants wheat and corn.
- 2 She wants to be a scient — and discover new things.
- 3 The visit — asked for directions to the ancient temple.
- 4 The act — performed his role in the play perfectly.
- 5 He is a great paint — whose artwork is famous worldwide.

Test on unit (4)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. In Egypt, many animals help people every day. ()
2. Water buffaloes carry heavy loads to markets. ()
3. Falcons protect crops by hunting small animals. ()
4. Geckos eat birds in homes, and scarab beetles improve the water. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. On our farm, chickens eggs every morning.
a. laid b. lays c. laying d. lay
2. A is a fast bird that hunts animals in fields.
a. donkey b. falcon c. gecko d. buffalo
3. Dolphins people who are in danger in the sea.
a. scare b. rescue c. cross d. hunt
4. The farmers seeds today.
a. plants b. are planting c. plant d. is planting

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

safely – danger – Horses – smell – sight

Some animals do important jobs that help people in many ways. Police dogs use their strong sense of ⁽¹⁾ to find lost people. Guide dogs lead blind people ⁽²⁾ across streets. ⁽³⁾ make people feel calm and relaxed. In the sea, rescue dolphins help save people in ⁽⁴⁾ These animals show how useful and caring they can be.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egrets are very helpful birds on farms. They eat insects that damage crops, so farmers do not need to use many chemicals. In the fields, you can often see a white egret catching hoppers with its sharp beak. Its long legs help it walk through water easily. Egrets also stay close to water buffaloes and eat the flies that bother them. They fly from field to field looking for food and can eat many insects in one day. Farmers like egrets because they keep the plants safe and healthier.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egrets are very helpful on farms.
a. insects b. people c. plants d. birds
2. The underlined word "damage" means
a. help b. cut c. use d. harm

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why do farmers like egrets in their fields?
.....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?
.....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. Does a gecko (eats) insects? – Yes, it does.
2. The pigeons (flew) at the moment.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. down – Scarab beetles – waste – help – break – and – the earth.
.....
2. of – kind – they – do? – do – What – jobs
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. what animals can you see on the farm
.....
2. we take good care of all our animals
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“On the farm”

(field – milking a cow – watching over)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar Test

on unit (4)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- I am watching a wildlife about animal helpers.
a. movie b. documentary c. video d. news
- The narrator says that help farmers by eating insects.
a. falcons b. scarabs c. egrets d. pigeons
- On the screen, a egret is standing in a field.
a. black b. white c. yellow d. green

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

guide – jobs – safely – Dolphins

Teacher : Hi! Hossam, did you know that some animals have real ⁽¹⁾.....?

Hossam : What kind of jobs do they do?

Teacher : Some ⁽²⁾..... dogs are for blind people. They help them walk
⁽³⁾..... and cross streets.

Hossam : What about animals in water?

Teacher : ⁽⁴⁾..... rescue people who are in danger. These animals are really helpful.

(C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

- are brave, smart animals that help people and catch criminals.
a. Police dogs b. Geckos c. Donkeys d. Falcons
- Geckos small insects at night.
a. eating b. eats c. ate d. eat
- My uncle milking a cow right now.
a. is b. am c. are d. was
- Sheep give us thick to make clothes.
a. wool b. sweaters c. blankets d. eggs



4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

1. My father is works in his office now. (.....)
2. We playing football every day at the club. (.....)
3. What does you eating right now? (.....)
4. Did Salma sleep early every night? (.....)

(D) Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Falcons are very helpful birds that farmers appreciate. They are fast, strong hunters that protect crops by catching small animals like rats and mice. These animals can damage plants, so falcons keep the fields safe. You can often see a falcon flying high in the sky, watching the fields carefully. When it spots a rat, it raids quickly to catch it. Falcons move from one field to another to find food. Because of their sharp eyes and speed, they play an important role in keeping farms healthy.

(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Falcons are very harmful birds. ()
2. You can often see a falcon flying high in the sky. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

3. Falcons move from one to another to find food.
a. field b. farm c. city d. barn
4. Falcons raid quickly to rats.
a. sleep b. play c. help d. catch
5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
a. mouse b. plant c. rat d. field

(E) Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:

"Animal helpers"

(egrets – insects – crops – control)

.....

.....

.....

5 Unit

Our Solar System

Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Explain their choices in a discussion about which planet is their favorite شرح اختياراتهم في نقاش عن أي كوكب مفضل لديهم
- Answer questions based on visual information, such as pictures of space or planets الإجابة عن الأسئلة بناءً على معلومات مرئية، مثل صور الفضاء أو الكواكب
- Present their work to the class عرض أعمالهم على الصف

Listening

- Recall key words and names of planets from a dialog about the solar system تذكر كلمات رئيسية وأسماء الكواكب من محادثة عن النظام الشمسي
- Identify the main ideas of a conversation about space exploration تحديد الأفكار الرئيسية لمحادثة حول استكشاف الفضاء
- Use information from a listening passage to determine the order of events استخدام المعلومات من مقطع استماع لتحديد ترتيب الأحداث

Reading

- List key facts from an article يذكر أهم الحقائق من مقال
- Explain the meaning of compound words within a text شرح معنى الكلمات المركبة داخل نص
- Distinguish between adjectives and other parts of speech in a story التمييز بين الصفات وأجزاء الكلام الأخرى في قصة
- Determine the moral or lesson of a story تحديد العبرة أو الدرس المستفاد من القصة

Writing

- Use correct comparative and superlative forms of adjectives in sentences استخدام صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل الصحيحة للصفات في جمل
- Write a descriptive paragraph about a space trip, applying adjectives to make their writing more interesting كتابة فقرة وصفية عن رحلة فضائية، مع تطبيق الصفات لجعل كتابتهم أكثر تشويقاً
- Design a brochure for a planet, incorporating a title, facts, and images تصميم منشور لكوكب، مع تضمين عنوان، حقائق، وصور

Lesson

1

From Mercury to Neptune

 Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:



Play Audio

New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة



The Sun

الشمس



Moon

القمر



the solar system

النظام الشمسي



galaxy

مجرة



Saturn

زحل



Mars

المريخ

Extra Vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

planetarium	القبة السماوية	space	الفضاء	planets	كواكب
stars	نجوم	screen	شاشة	Venus	الزهرة
Mercury	عطارد	Earth	الأرض	Jupiter	المشتري
rings	حلقات	around	حول	the Milky Way	درب التبانة

Adjectives

الصفات

big	كبير	the largest	الأكبر	shiny	لامع/براق
exciting	مثير	small	صغير	interesting	مثير للاهتمام

**Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
name يُسمِّي	named	see يرى	saw
explore يستكشف	explored	make يصنع/يجعل	made

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

learn about يتعلَّم عن	iron-rich soil تربة غنية بالحديد
Good job! عمل جيد!	famous for مشهور بـ
part of جزء من	

Definitions

تعريفات

Mercury عطارد	the smallest planet	الكوكب الأصغر
Mars المريخ	the red planet	الكوكب الأحمر
Saturn زحل	a planet with rings	كوكب ذو حلقات
galaxy مجرة	a group of many stars	مجموعة من النجوم الكثيرة

Tip!**Good listeners pay attention to:**

ينتبه المستمعون الجيدون إلى:

- Key words (names, numbers, places) الكلمات المفتاحية (الأسماء، الأرقام، الأماكن)
- Main ideas (what the speaker is mostly talking about) الأفكار الرئيسية (ما يتحدث عنه المتحدث غالباً)
- Details (facts that give extra information) التفاصيل (الحقائق التي تُعطي معلومات إضافية)

Remember: You don't need to understand every single word to get the meaning!

تذكّر: ليس عليك فهم كل كلمة لفهم المعنى!

**(Conversation) main points** النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة

- Amina and Omar were at the space museum. أمينة وعُمر كانا في متحف الفضاء.
- The guide showed them the Sun, the Moon, and planets. وُضِّحَ لهما المرشد الشمس، القمر، والكواكب.
- They learned that Mars is the Red Planet, Jupiter is the largest planet, and Saturn is known for its rings. تعلَّمَا أن المريخ هو الكوكب الأحمر، المشتري هو الكوكب الأكبر، وزحل معروف بحلقاته.
- They knew the four small planets: Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars. عرفا الكواكب الأربعة الصغيرة: عطارد، الزهرة، الأرض، والمريخ.
- They also learned about the Milky Way. تعلَّمَا أيضًا عن درب التبانة.

Conversation**A Trip to the Planetarium**

رحلة إلى القبة السماوية

**Read and notice:**

اقرأ ولاحظ:

At the space museum, Amina, Omar, and a guide talk about planets and stars.

في متحف الفضاء، أمينة، عُمر، والمرشد يتحدثون عن الكواكب والنجوم.



1 Welcome, everyone, to the planetarium! Today we will learn about the solar system.

مرحبًا، بالجميع، في القبة السماوية! اليوم سوف نتعلَّم عن النظام الشمسي.

Guide

2 Wow! Oh, look at the big screen. I can see the Sun and the Moon.

واو! أوه، انظروا إلى الشاشة الكبيرة. أستطيع أن أرى الشمس والقمر.

**Amina**

3 Mars is called the Red Planet because its iron-rich soil makes it look red.

يُسَمَّى المريخ الكوكب الأحمر لأن تربته الغنية بالحديد تجعله يبدو أحمر اللون.



4 Ohhh, that's interesting!

أوووه، هذا مثير للاهتمام!



5 Yeah! I see the planets: Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars.

أجل! أرى الكواكب: عطارد، الزهرة، الأرض، والمريخ.

Omar



6 Good job! Those are the four small planets. Can you name a big one?

عمل جيداً! تلك هي الكواكب الأربعة الصغيرة. هل يمكنك تسمية كوكب واحد كبير؟



7 Is it Jupiter?

هل هو المشتري؟



8 Yes! Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

نعم! المشتري هو الكوكب الأكبر في النظام الشمسي.



9 And those shiny rings—are they around Saturn?

وتلك الحلقات اللامعة—هل هي حول زحل؟



10 Exactly! Saturn is famous for its rings.

بالضبط! زحل مشهور بحلقاته.



11 Wow, so many stars!

واو، الكثير من النجوم!



12 Yes, they are part of a galaxy. Our galaxy is called the Milky Way.

نعم، إنها جزء من المجرة. مجرتنا تُسمَّى درب التبانة.



13 So the solar system is inside it?

إذن النظام الشمسي موجود بداخله؟



14 Exactly! The Sun, Moon, and planets make space exciting to explore.

بالضبط! الشمس، القمر، والكواكب تجعل الفضاء مثيراً للاستكشاف.

Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- 1 Amina and Omar learned about animals in the planetarium. ()
- 2 Amina sees the Sun and the Moon on the big screen. ()
- 3 Mars is called the Red Planet because of its iron-rich soil. ()
- 4 Venus is the largest planet. ()

4. (X)

3. (✓)

2. (✓)

1. (X)

Answers:



Play Audio

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False: استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

- 1 Our galaxy is called the Milky Way. ()
- 2 The largest planet is Jupiter. ()
- 3 Saturn is famous for its shiny squares. ()
- 4 Mars is called the blue planet. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The shines at night.
a. Sun b. Moon c. Earth d. Mars
- 2 Our has many stars. It's called the Milky Way.
a. show b. book c. ground d. galaxy
- 3 has beautiful rings around it. They're shiny.
a. Saturn b. Mars c. Jupiter d. Earth
- 4 Mars's soil is rich in So, it's called the Red Planet.
a. sand b. iron c. glass d. plastic
- 5 We enjoyed a space show at the
a. street b. planetarium c. screen d. machine
- 6 Astronauts can space with rockets.
a. find b. get c. make d. explore
- 7 The gives us light and heat.
a. Moon b. Venus c. Sun d. Earth
- 8 Mercury is the smallest
a. star b. galaxy c. planet d. ring

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

shiny – explore – solar – Venus – go

Last weekend, we learned about space. Our teacher told us interesting things about the ⁽¹⁾..... system. We saw the small planets. They are Mercury, ⁽²⁾....., Earth, and Mars. Also there was the largest one which is Jupiter. The ⁽³⁾..... rings, which are around Saturn, were wonderful. It was exciting to ⁽⁴⁾..... the space.

2 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 four – Those – the – planets. – are – small

2 famous – is – shiny – Saturn – for – rings. – its

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 I can see the sun and the Moon

2 can you name a big one

4 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

“The Milky Way”

(Moon – Saturn – Mars)



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

astronaut	رائد فضاء	female	أنثى	engineer	مهندس
people	ناس/أشخاص	dreams	أحلام	nothing	لا شيء
work	عمل	Uranus	أورانوس	Neptune	نبتون
seeing	رؤية	universe	الكون	Arab	عرب

Adjectives الصفات

the first	الأول	Egyptian	مصري	colder	أكثر برودة
young	صغير السن	impossible	مستحيل	smaller	أصغر
hotter	أكثر حرارة	drier	أكثر جفافاً	bigger	أكبر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
inspire يلهم	inspired	become يصبح	became
follow يتبع	followed	say يقول	said
believe يصدق/يعتقد	believed	has يملك/لديه	had
study يذاكر	studied		
explain يشرح	explained		
describe يصف	described		
imagine يتخيل	imagined		
realize يدرك	realized		



Important expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

travel into	يسافر إلى	farther away	أبعد
how small	مدى صَغَر	compared to	مقارنة بـ
looking at	النظر إلى		

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Egypt's First Astronaut

أول رائدة فضاء مصرية

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She became the first Arab engineer to travel into space in 2022. Sara says "I want to inspire young people in Egypt to follow their dreams and believe that nothing is impossible." In her work, she studied the solar system and the planets. She explains: Mercury is smaller than Earth. Venus is hotter than Earth. Mars is drier than Earth, while Jupiter is the largest planet. Saturn has beautiful rings, and Uranus and Neptune are colder and farther away. Sara describes looking at the Sun, the Moon, and the stars in our galaxy. "The galaxy is bigger than we imagine," she says. Seeing Earth from space made her realize how small our planet is compared to the universe.



سارة صبري هي أول رائدة فضاء مصرية. أصبحت أول مهندسة عربية تسافر إلى الفضاء عام 2022. تقول سارة: «أريد أن ألهم الشباب في مصر أن يتبعوا أحلامهم ويؤمنوا أن لا شيء مستحيل». في عملها، درست النظام الشمسي والكواكب. هي تشرح: عطارد أصغر من الأرض. الزهرة أكثر حرارة من الأرض. المريخ أكثر جفافاً من الأرض، بينما المشتري هو الكوكب الأكبر. زحل له حلقات جميلة، وأورانوس ونبتون أكثر برودة وأبعد. تصف سارة النظر إلى الشمس، القمر، والنجوم في مجرتنا. تقول: «المجرة أكبر مما تتخيل». رؤية الأرض من الفضاء جعلتها تدرك مدى صَغَر كوكبنا مقارنةً بالكون.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 From the, we can see the other planets.
a. city b. space c. field d. river
- 2 We see many in the night sky.
a. blocks b. tools c. pins d. stars
- 3 The is full of planets and galaxies.
a. universe b. air c. farm d. shape
- 4 The travels into space in a rocket.
a. carpenter b. farmer c. astronaut d. doctor

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

space – engineer – planets – impossible – explain

Sara Sabry is an Egyptian astronaut. She is a role model as she is the first Arab ⁽¹⁾ to travel into space. When she traveled into ⁽²⁾, she inspired all of us to follow our dreams. She believes that nothing is ⁽³⁾ She studied the ⁽⁴⁾ She found interesting facts about them.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 How many planets were mentioned in the text?

.....

- 2 Where is Sara Sabry from?

.....

- 3 Which planets are colder than Earth?

.....



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Comparatives and Superlatives

المقارنات والتفضيلات

Adjectives

الصفات

- An adjective is a word that describes a noun. It can come ...

الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسماً. يمكن أن تأتي ...

- before a noun. قبل اسم. **Ex:** – Neptun is a **cold** planet.
- after verb to (be). بعد فعل (be). **Ex:** – Venus is **hot**.

I. Comparatives

المقارنات

- We use comparatives to show how two things are different.

نستخدم المقارنات لإظهار مدى اختلاف شيئين.

(A) Short adjectives

الصفات القصيرة

adjective + **-er** + **than**

لمعظم الصفات.

Ex: – small → **smaller**

Ex: – A car is **smaller than** a train.



adjective + **-r** + **than**

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (-e).

Ex: – nice → **nicer**

Ex: – The new park is **nicer than** the old one.



adjective + **-ier** + **than**

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (-y) وقبله

حرف ساكن.

Ex: – dry → **drier**

Ex: – Mars is **drier than** Earth.



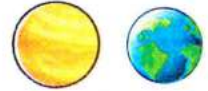
**Note**

- If an adjective ends in a vowel and a consonant, we usually double the consonant before we add (-er) to the end of the adjective.

• إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف متحرك وحرف ساكن، فإننا عادةً نضاعف الحرف الساكن قبل أن نضيف (-er) إلى نهاية الصفة.

Ex: – hot → hott**er**

– big → bigg**er**



Ex: – Venus is hott**er** than Earth.

(B) Long adjectives (two or more syllables)

الصفات الطويلة (المكونة من مقطعين صوتيين أو أكثر)

more + adjective + than

Ex: – beautiful → more beautiful than – exciting → more exciting than

Ex: – Venus is more beautiful than Earth.

**2. Superlatives**

التفضيلات

- We use superlatives to show that one thing is the most in a group of three or more.

• نستخدم صيغ التفضيل لإظهار أن شيئاً واحداً هو الأفضل في مجموعة مكونة من ثلاثة أشياء أو أكثر.

(A) Short adjectives

الصفات القصيرة

the + adjective + -est

لمعظم الصفات.

Ex: – cold → the cold**est**

Ex: – January is the cold**est** month of the year.



the + adjective + -st

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (-e).

Ex: – large → the large**st**

Ex: – Jupiter is the large**st** planet in the solar system.



the + adjective + -iest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (-y) وقبله حرف ساكن.

Ex: – happy → the happ**iest**

Ex: – She was the happ**iest** student when she won the prize.



**Note**

- If an adjective ends in a vowel and a consonant, we usually double the consonant before we add (-est) to the end of the adjective.

• إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف متحرك وحرف ساكن، فإننا عادةً نضاعف الحرف الساكن قبل أن نضيف (-est) إلى نهاية الصفة.

Ex: – hot → **hottest** – big → **biggest**

Ex: – The elephant is **the biggest** animal in the zoo.

**(B) Long adjectives (two or more syllables)**

الصفات الطويلة (المكونة من مقطعين صوتيين أو أكثر)

↓
the most + adjective

Ex: – distant → **the most distant** – colorful → **the most colorful**

Ex: – Neptune is **the most distant** planet from the Sun.

**Tip!**

- There are some irregular adjectives that have different forms in comparatives and superlatives.

• هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة التي لها صيغ مختلفة في المقارنات والتفضيلات.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good	better	best
bad	worse	worst
far	farther	farthest

Ex: – She is **the best** runner in the class.



– His handwriting is **worse than** mine.



– This village is **the farthest** from the city.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 A parrot is colorful than an eagle.
a. the b. that c. most d. more
- 2 Milk is than soda.
a. healthier b. healthy c. bad d. the best
- 3 Amgad is than Ali.
a. tall b. short c. the tallest d. taller
- 4 This book is the one. I enjoyed it very much.
a. best b. worse c. good d. better
- 5 Neptune is from the Sun than Venus.
a. farthest b. near c. far d. farther
- 6 I think grapes are the fruit.
a. sweet b. sweetest c. sweeter d. salty
- 7 Math is the difficult subject for me.
a. most b. more c. than d. best
- 8 My room is the one in the house.
a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. a big

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 She is (thin) than her mother.
- 2 Russia is the (large) country in the world.
- 3 The Sahara is one of the (dry) places on Earth.
- 4 Watermelon is (juicy) than dates.
- 5 A mountain is higher (than) a hill.
- 6 In my opinion, tennis is (exciting) than volleyball.
- 7 I think the plane is (than) fastest way to travel.
- 8 Aswan is the (hot) city in Egypt.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I watched a TV program about Sara Sabry, the first Egyptian female astronaut. Her experience encouraged me to learn more about science and space. I went to the computer lab at school and searched for information about our galaxy, the Milky Way. I found a website for space lovers. It explains that Mercury is smaller than Earth. Venus is hotter than Earth. Mars is drier than Earth. Uranus and Neptune are colder and farther away from Earth. After learning these facts, I was really excited to visit a planetarium.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Earth is than Venus.
a. better b. hotter c. drier d. colder
- 2 The opposite of the underlined word "smaller" is ".....".
a. bigger b. nicer c. cooler d. taller

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 Why was the writer excited to visit a planetarium?
.....
- 4 What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?
.....
- 5 What is the text mainly about?
.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 This robot is the (fast) one in the factory.
- 2 Samir is (fit) than Amir.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- i want to inspire young people in egypt.



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

classmates	زملاء الدراسة	science class	صف العلوم	facts	حقائق
everything	كل شيء	himself	بنفسه	sunlight	أشعة الشمس
chart	مخطط/جدول	quietly	بهدهوء	together	معًا/سويًا
colors	ألوان	homework	واجب منزلي	job	عمل/وظيفة

Adjectives الصفات

great	عظيم	the farthest	الأبعد	bright	ساطع
clear	واضح	better	أفضل	easier	أسهل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
want يريد	wanted	do يفعل	did
help يساعد	helped	draw يرسم	drew
finish ينتهي	finished	sit يجلس	sat
sigh يتنهد	sighed	shake يهز	shook
color يلون	colored	write يكتب	wrote
add يضيف	added		
smile يتسم	smiled		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

asked ... to	طلب ... أن	At first,	في البداية،
took too long	استغرق وقتًا طويلًا	my way	بطريقتي
The next day,	اليوم التالي،	looked worried	بدا قلقًا



Definitions

تعريفات

poster	ملصق	a big paper with pictures and writing	ورقة كبيرة بها صور وكتابة
color pencils	أقلام تلوين	tools for drawing and coloring	أدوات للرسم والتلوين
messy	فوضوي	not clean or not neat	غير نظيف أو غير أنيق
rings	حلقات	thin circles around Saturn	حلقات رقيقة حول زحل
teamwork	عمل جماعي	working together to finish something	العمل معًا لإنهاء شيء ما

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Nada and Adam were classmates in science class. Their teacher asked them to make a classroom poster about the planets. At first, Adam wanted to do everything himself. He drew Mercury, Venus, and Earth. But the work took too long, and the sunlight colors looked messy. Nada sat quietly with her color pencils. "Can I help?" Nada asked. Adam shook his head. "No, I want it my way." The next day, the homework chart still wasn't finished. The teacher looked worried. Adam sighed. "Okay, Nada, you can help." Together, they worked after school. Nada colored Mars red and added rings to Saturn. Adam wrote facts: "Jupiter is the largest planet. Neptune is the farthest." When they finished, the planet poster was bright and clear. The teacher smiled. "Great teamwork!" Nada and Adam smiled too. They learned something bigger than planets. Working together makes the job easier—and better.



كان آدم وندى زميلين في حصة العلوم. طلبت منهما معلمتهما أن يصنعا ملصقًا صغيرًا عن الكواكب. في البداية، أراد آدم أن يقوم بكل شيء بنفسه. رسم عطارد، الزهرة، والأرض. لكن العمل استغرق وقتًا طويلًا، وبدت ألوان أشعة الشمس فوضوية. جلست ندى بهدوء مع أقلام التلوين الخاصة بها. «هل يمكنني المساعدة؟» سألت ندى. هزَّ آدم رأسه. «لا، أريد ذلك بطريقتي». في اليوم التالي، لم يكن مخطط الواجب المنزلي قد انتهى بعد. بدت المعلمة قلقة. تنهد آدم. «حسنًا، يا ندى، يمكنك المساعدة». عملًا معًا بعد المدرسة. لَوَّنت ندى المريخ باللون الأحمر وأضافت حلقات لزحل. كتب آدم حقائق: «المشتري هو الكوكب الأكبر. نبتون هو الأبعد». عندما انتهيا، كان ملصق الكواكب ساطعًا وواضحًا. ابتسمت المعلمة. «عمل جماعي رائع!» ندى وآدم ابتسما أيضًا. لقد تعلَّما شيئًا أكبر من الكواكب. العمل معًا يجعل العمل أسهل - وأفضل.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Thin circles around Saturn are called
 a. rings b. slides c. plates d. problems
- 2 Her room is never It's always clean and neat.
 a. tidy b. bright c. messy d. dark
- 3 The boy couldn't finish his drawing. He lost his color
 a. beds b. desks c. phones d. pencils
- 4 means working together to finish something.
 a. Job b. Teamwork c. Classroom d. Project

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

drew – wrote – help – sighed – saw

Lina and Kareem had to make a poster about healthy food. Kareem tried to do it alone, but he couldn't. Kareem ⁽¹⁾ because he was sad. He realized that working alone isn't a good idea. So he asked for Lina's ⁽²⁾ Lina ⁽³⁾ the pictures, and Kareem ⁽⁴⁾ some tips. When they worked together, they made a bright poster.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 When did Adam ask Nada for help?

.....

- 2 How did Nada help Adam?

.....

- 3 What happened when Adam and Nada worked together?

.....

B Word Building Skills

 Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:



Play Audio

Compound Words

الكلمات المركبة

- A compound word is made when two small words are joined together to make one new word. الكلمة المركبة تتكون عندما يتم ربط كلمتين صغيرتين معًا لتكوين كلمة واحدة جديدة.
- Sometimes compound words are written as one word (classroom), sometimes as two words (ice cream).
- في بعض الأحيان تُكتب الكلمات المركبة ككلمة واحدة (classroom)، وفي بعض الأحيان تُكتب ككلمتين (ice cream).

Ex:



classroom

فصل دراسي

a room where you study

غرفة تدرس فيها

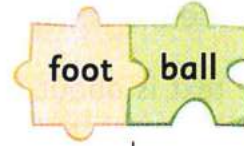


sunlight

أشعة الشمس

light from the sun

ضوء من الشمس



football

كرة القدم

a game with a ball you kick

لعبة بالكرة التي تركلها



starfish

نجم البحر



toothbrush

فرشاة الأسنان



notebook

مفكرة



bedroom

غرفة النوم



lunchbox

صندوق الغداء

Extra Words

كلمات إضافية

schoolwork	واجب مدرسي	blackboard	سبورة	pancake	فطائر محلاة
teamwork	عمل جماعي	snowman	رجل الثلج	sunflower	زهرة عباد الشمس
storybook	كتاب قصصي	sandcastle	قلعة رملية	spaceship	سفينة فضاء

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Farid and Salma's dad asked them to clean the garden. At first, Farid refused his sister's help. He wanted to pick up all the leaves by himself, but the work was too much. It was about noon when Farid started to get tired, and the garden was still not clean. Farid looked at his sister, tired. Salma began collecting the trash while Farid swept the ground. Together, the work didn't take too long, and they finished quickly. At the end, Farid realized that teamwork makes everything easier.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The text is about the importance of
 a. cleaning b. garden c. family d. teamwork
- 2 The opposite of the underlined word "quickly" is
 a. clearly b. mainly c. loudly d. slowly

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 Why did Farid refuse his sister's help at first?

.....

- 4 What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?

.....

- 5 What did Salma do when her brother got tired?

.....

2 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

- 1 do – Adam – everything – to – himself. – wanted

.....

- 2 poster – and – was – The – bright – planet – clear.

.....

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

playground	ملعب	rocket	صاروخ	lamp	مصباح
asteroids	كويكبات	lights	أضواء	spaceship	سفينة فضاء
billion	مليار	swings	أرجوحات	slide	زحلوقة
star-ball	كرة نجمية	alien	كائن فضائي	clouds	سُحب
comets	مذنبات	gas	غاز	dust	غبار

Adjectives الصفات

last	سابق	shiny	لامع	dark	مظلم
round	مستدير	colorful	ملوّن	glowing	متوهج
third	ثالث	huge	ضخم	soft	ناعم
kind	لطيف	fun	ممتع		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
land يهبط	landed	show يُظهر/يُري	showed
remember يتذكّر	remembered	wake up يستيقظ	woke up
laugh يضحك	laughed	spin يدور	spun
live يعيش	lived		
cross يعبر	crossed		



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

had a dream	كان لديه حلم	made a loud noise	أحدث ضجيجًا عاليًا
went up into	صعد إلى	looked like	بدا مثل
made of	مصنوع من	across the night sky	عَبَر سماء الليل
shaped like	على شكل	full of	مليء بـ
near the edge of	قريب من حافة	travel once around	يدور دورة واحدة حول
band of	حزمة من	take about 100,000 years	يستغرق حوالي 100,000 سنة



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

My Trip in a Spaceship رحلتي في سفينة فضاء

Last night, I had a dream. I was inside a big, shiny spaceship with round windows. The rocket made a loud noise as it went up into the dark sky. Outside, the bright Moon looked like a lamp, and the stars were like small lights in the sky. When the spaceship landed, I saw a fun playground in space. The swings were made of light, and the slide looked so colorful. There was even a round star-ball rolling on the ground. Then, a kind alien with big eyes smiled at me. He showed me his planet. The houses were like soft clouds, and the children played football with the glowing star-ball. We laughed and played together. It was a happy and fun place. When I woke up, I still remembered the bright colors in space.



الليلة الماضية، كان لدي حلم. كنت داخل سفينة فضاء كبيرة، لامعة لها نوافذ مستديرة. أحدث الصاروخ ضجيجًا عاليًا وهو يصعد إلى السماء المظلمة. في الخارج، بدا القمر الساطع مثل مصباح، وكانت النجوم مثل أضواء صغيرة في السماء. عندما هبطت السفينة الفضائية، رأيت ملعبًا ممتلئًا في الفضاء. كانت الأرجوحة مصنوعة من الضوء، وبدأت الزحلوقة ملوثة جدًا. حتى إن هناك كرة نجمية مستديرة تتدحرج على الأرض. بعد ذلك، ابتسم لي كائن فضائي لطيف ذو عينيْن كبيرتين. أراني كوكبه. كانت المنازل مثل السُحب الناعمة، وكان الأطفال يلعبون كرة القدم بالكرة النجمية المتوهجة. ضحكنا ولعبنا معًا. كان مكانًا سعيدًا وممتعًا. عندما استيقظت، ما زلت أتذكر الألوان الزاهية في الفضاء.



Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for writing a paragraph about your own trip in space



نصائح لكتابة فقرة عن رحلتك الخاصة في الفضاء

- Start with where your story happens: (in a spaceship, on a planet, on the moon, etc.).
ابدأ بالمكان الذي تحدث فيه قصتك: (في سفينة فضاء، على كوكب، على القمر، إلخ).

Ex: I was inside a big, shiny spaceship.

- Say who is in your story: (you, a friend, an astronaut, or an alien).

قل من الذي في قصتك: (أنت، صديق، رائد فضاء، أو كائن فضائي).

Ex: Then, a kind alien with big eyes smiled at me.

- Use adjectives to describe what you see: (big, bright, shiny, fun, etc.).

استخدم صفات لوصف ما تراه: (كبير، ساطع، براق، ممتع، إلخ).

Ex: The slide looked so colorful.

- Add something exciting that happens: (visiting a planet, finding a playground, etc.).
أضف شيئاً مثيراً يحدث: (زيارة كوكب، العثور على ملعب، إلخ).

Ex: I saw a fun playground in space.

- End with how you feel about your trip.

اختتم بما تشعر به تجاه رحلتك.

Ex: It was a happy and fun place. When I woke up, I still remembered the bright colors in space.

Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- | | |
|--|-----|
| 1 The writer was inside a big train. | () |
| 2 The Moon looked like a lamp. | () |
| 3 A kind alien showed the writer the planet. | () |

3. (✓)

2. (✓)

1. (X)

Answers:



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Fact File: The Milky Way Galaxy

ملف الحقائق: مجرة درب التبانة



What is the Milky Way?

ما هو درب التبانة؟

The Milky Way is the galaxy where Earth and the Sun are. It looks like a



bright band of stars across the night sky. It is shaped like a big circle that spins, full of stars, gas, and dust.

درب التبانة هو المجرة التي توجد بها الأرض والشمس. يبدو كحزمة ساطعة من النجوم غير سماء الليل، إنه على شكل دائرة كبيرة تدور، مليئة بالنجوم، الغاز، والغبار.



What's Inside?

ماذا يوجد في الداخل؟

The Milky Way has over 200 billion stars! ✨



It has planets, moons, and rocks like comets and asteroids. The Sun is one of the stars near the edge of our galaxy.

درب التبانة به أكثر من 200 مليار نجماً يضم كواكب، أقماراً، وصخوراً مثل المذنبات والكويكبات. الشمس هي أحد النجوم القريبة من حافة مجرتنا.



Where Are We?

أين نحن؟

Our solar system is part of the Milky Way. We live on Earth, the third planet from the Sun. It takes the Sun about 230 million years to travel once around the Milky Way!

نظامنا الشمسي جزء من درب التبانة. نعيش على الأرض، الكوكب الثالث من الشمس. تستغرق الشمس حوالي 230 مليون سنة لتدور دورة واحدة حول درب التبانة!



Amazing Facts

حقائق مذهلة

The Milky Way is so huge that light takes about 100,000 years to cross it! When you see stars in the night sky, you're looking at our galaxy. There may be other galaxies like the Milky Way in the universe – even bigger ones!

درب التبانة ضخم جداً لدرجة أن الضوء يستغرق حوالي 100,000 سنة لعبورها! عندما ترى النجوم في سماء الليل، فأنت تنظر إلى مجرتنا. قد توجد مجرات أخرى مثل درب التبانة في الكون - حتى مجرات أكبر!



Read and notice the following steps:

اقرأ ولاحظ الخطوات الآتية:

Steps of creating your own space fact file

خطوات إنشاء ملف حقائق الفضاء الخاص بك



- 1 Choose a planet. اختر كوكبًا.
- Pick a real planet like Mars or Saturn, or make up your own imaginary one! (Example: Planet Glitterstar or Planet IceCloud!)

اختر كوكبًا حقيقيًا مثل المريخ أو زحل، أو ابتكر كوكبًا خياليًا خاصًا بك! (مثال: كوكب جليتر ستار أو كوكب آيس كلاود!)

- 2 Write 3–4 short parts. اكتب 3-4 أجزاء قصيرة.

Use these sections to organize your fact file:

استخدم هذه الأقسام لتنظيم ملف الحقائق الخاص بك:

- Welcome to my planet – introduce your planet. مرحبًا بكم في كوكبي - قدّم كوكبك.
- What you can see – describe what it looks like. ما يمكنكم رؤيته - صف كيف يبدو.
- What you can do – talk about fun or strange activities visitors can try. ما يمكنكم فعله - تحدث عن الأنشطة الممتعة أو الغريبة التي يمكن للزوار تجربتها.
- How you will feel – describe the experience or mood. كيف ستشعرون - صف التجربة أو الحالة المزاجية.

- 3 Use adjectives. استخدم الصفات.

Make your writing colorful! Use describing words like:

big, hot, shiny, colorful, fun, quiet, bright.

اجعل كتابتك ملوّنة! استخدم كلمات وصفية مثل: كبير، ساخن، لامع، ملوّن، مرح، هادئ، مشرق.

- 4 Add a compound word. أضف كلمة مركّبة.

Include at least one compound word such as:

spaceship, moonlight, starlight, sunlight, spacewalk.

قم بتضمين كلمة مركّبة واحدة على الأقل مثل: سفينة فضاء، ضوء القمر، ضوء النجوم، أشعة الشمس، السير في الفضاء.

- 5 Decorate your fact file. زين ملف الحقائق الخاص بك.

Draw or decorate with planets, stars, rockets, and spaceships. Make it creative

and bright! ارسم أو زين بالكواكب، النجوم، الصواريخ، والسفن الفضائية. اجعلها إبداعية ومشرقة!

Tip!

- Use short, clear sentences and imagine you're a space explorer writing to invite people to your planet!

• استخدم جملًا قصيرة وواضحة وتخيل أنك مستكشف فضاء تكتب لدعوة الناس إلى كوكبك!

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Astronauts travel into space in a
a. bus b. helicopter c. spaceship d. plane
- 2 We have a in our garden. We play on it together.
a. slide b. rocket c. ship d. cloud
- 3 The Moon looks in the night sky.
a. fun b. noisy c. glowing d. loud
- 4 When the plane at the airport, I saw my uncle.
a. realized b. traveled c. remembered d. landed

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

aliens – planet – shiny – doors – houses

Last weekend, I watched an interesting movie about a space trip. The astronaut traveled in a ⁽¹⁾ spaceship with round windows. He landed on a bright ⁽²⁾ with glowing colors. Friendly ⁽³⁾ showed him their playground and star-ball games. They lived in soft ⁽⁴⁾ It was exciting and fun.

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جُملاً:

1 together. – played – laughed – and – We

2 the – is – Way? – What – Milky

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- it is shaped like a big circle

5 Write a fiction story of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب قصة خيالية من أربعين (40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"An imaginary planet"
(stars – aliens – huge)

Unit 5 Review

Vocabulary

The Sun	الشمس	Moon	القمر	female	أنثى
galaxy	مجرة	Saturn	زحل	Mars	المريخ
planetarium	القبة السماوية	space	الفضاء	planets	كواكب
Mercury	عطارد	rings	حلقات	Venus	الزهرة
asteroids	كويكبات	the largest	الأكبر	Jupiter	المشتري
astronaut	رائد فضاء	universe	الكون	Egyptian	مصري
comets	مذنبات	slide	زحلوقة	dust	غبار
Neptune	نبتون	Uranus	أورانس	teamwork	عمل جماعي
alien	كائن فضائي	the Milky Way	درب التبانة	the solar system	النظام الشمسي

Language

1. Comparatives

- We use comparatives to show how two things are different.

• نستخدم المقارنات لإظهار مدى اختلاف شيئين.

- Short adjectives:

adjective + **-er/-r/-ier** + **than**

- Long adjectives:

more + adjective + **than**

Ex: – A car is **smaller than** a train. – Venus is **more beautiful than** Earth.
– Mars is **drier than** Earth – Venus is **hotter than** Earth.

2. Superlatives

- We use superlatives to show that one thing is the most in a group of three or more.

• نستخدم صيغ التفضيل لإظهار أن شيئاً واحداً هو الأفضل في مجموعة من ثلاثة أشياء أو أكثر.

- Short adjectives:

the + adjective + **-est/-st/-iest**

- Long adjectives:

the most + adjective

Ex: – January is **the coldest** month of the year.
– Jupiter is **the largest** planet in the solar system.
– Neptune is **the most distant** planet from the Sun.
– The elephant is **the biggest** animal in the zoo.

- Some adjectives have different forms in comparatives and superlatives.

• بعض الصفات لها صيغ مختلفة في المقارنات والتفضيلات.

Ex: – good → **better** → **best**

– bad → **worse** → **worst**

– far → **farther** → **farthest**



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 From Mercury to Neptune

- Omar and Amina learned about the solar system at the planetarium.

تعلم عمر وأمنية عن النظام الشمسي في القبة السماوية.

- They saw the Sun, the Moon, and many stars.

رأوا الشمس، القمر، والعديد من النجوم.

- Mars looks red because its soil is rich in iron.

يظهر المريخ باللون الأحمر لأن تربته تحتوي على الحديد.

- Jupiter is the biggest planet and Saturn has bright rings.

المشتري الكوكب الأكبر وزحل له حلقات لامعة.

- The Milky Way has our solar system inside it.

يحتوي درب التبانة على نظامنا الشمسي بداخله.

Lesson 2 From Egypt to the Galaxy (Sara Sabry: Reaching for the Stars)

- Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She traveled into space in 2022.

سارة صبري هي أول رائدة فضاء مصرية سافرت إلى الفضاء عام 2022.

- She wants to inspire young Egyptians to follow their dreams.

تريد أن تلهم الشباب المصريين لمتابعة أحلامهم.

- She studied the solar system.

لقد درست النظام الشمسي.

- She compared Earth to other planets: Mercury is smaller than Earth, Venus is hotter, Mars is drier, and Jupiter is the largest planet.

قارنت الأرض بالكواكب الأخرى: عطارد أصغر من الأرض، الزهرة أكثر حرارة، المريخ أكثر جفافاً، والمشتري هو الكوكب الأكبر.

- Seeing space made her realize how huge our galaxy is and how small Earth is compared to the universe.

رؤية الفضاء جعلتها تدرك مدى ضخامة مجرتنا ومدى صغر حجم الأرض مقارنة بالكون.

Lessons 4&5 Writing: A Dream in Space/ Think and Create: Space Travel Fact File

- The Milky Way is the galaxy that contains Earth, the Sun, many stars, gas, and dust.

درب التبانة هو المجرة التي تضم الأرض، الشمس، العديد من النجوم، الغاز، والغبار.

- It has more than 200 billion stars, with planets, moons, comets, and asteroids.

يوجد فيها أكثر من 200 مليار نجم، إضافة إلى كواكب، أقمار، مذنبات، وكويكبات.

- The Sun is one of the stars near the edge of the Milky Way.

الشمس هي أحد النجوم القريبة من حافة درب التبانة.

- Earth is the third planet from the Sun.

الأرض هي الكوكب الثالث من الشمس.

- The Milky Way is huge, and light needs about 100,000 years to cross it.

درب التبانة ضخم، ويحتاج الضوء حوالي 100.000 سنة لعبوره.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

الشمس	المريخ
القمر	الأرض
النظام الشمسي	لامع/براق
مجرة	درب التبانة
زحل	القبة السماوية

Lesson (2)

رائد فضاء	مهندس
أورانوس	الكون
أكثر حرارة	أكثر جفافاً
نبتون	مستحيل
عرب	أثني

Lesson (3)

زملاء الدراسة	حقائق
أقلام تلوين	أشعة الشمس
واضح	مخطط/جدول
فوضوي	ملصق
حلقات	عمل جماعي

Lessons (4&5)

متوهج	كائن فضائي
أرجوحات	مصباح
صاروخ	زحلوقة
مذنبات	سفينة فضاء



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
want		do	.....
see		draw	.....
make		sit	.....
inspire		shake	.....
follow		remember	.....
believe		laugh	.....
study		live	.....
explain		cross	.....
describe		show	.....
imagine		explore	.....
realize		spin	.....
become		color	.....
help		land	.....
finish		add	.....
sigh		name	.....
smile		write	.....



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Your visit to the planetarium"

- 1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below. فُكِّرْ فِي كَلِمَات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصنّفها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. guide 2. Mars 3. soil

Verbs

1. visited 2. explained 3. learned

Others

1. last 2. red 3. bright

- 2 Form your sentences. كَوِّن جُمْلَكَ.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكملة الجملة)

1. I visited the planetarium last week.
2. The guide explained why Mars looks red.
3. It's because of its iron-rich soil.
4. I also learned that Saturn has bright rings.

- 3 Write your paragraph. اكتب فقرتك.

I visited the planetarium last week. I saw the small planets: Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars. The guide explained why Mars looks red. It's because of its iron-rich soil. I also learned that Saturn has bright rings and that Jupiter is the largest planet.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"A project about planets"

Nouns

1. 2. 3.

Verbs

1. 2. 3.

Others

1. 2. 3.

Your sentences

1. 2.
3. 4.

Your paragraph فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

At the space museum

I visited the planetarium with my friends. We saw the Sun and the Moon on a screen. We learned about the Sun, the Moon, and the planets. Jupiter is the largest planet. Our solar system is inside the Milky Way.



An Egyptian astronaut

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian woman to travel into space. She studied the solar system. She also described how other planets differ from Earth. Seeing Earth from space made her realize how small our planet is compared to the universe.



My science project

I worked with my classmate Hazem to make a poster about planets. First, each one tried to work alone, but it was difficult. When we helped each other, we finished it quickly. We learned that teamwork makes any project easier. We enjoyed it.



The Milky Way

The Milky Way is the galaxy that contains Earth, the Sun, and many stars. It also has planets, moons, comets, and asteroids. Our solar system is near its edge. The galaxy is huge, and light takes a very long time to cross it.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Match the words to their definitions:

صِل الكلمات بتعريفاتها:

- | | |
|-----------|-------------------------|
| 1 Mercury | a a planet with rings |
| 2 Mars | b the smallest planet |
| 3 Saturn | c the red planet |
| 4 galaxy | d a group of many stars |

2 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Solar power is than fuel in long space missions.
a. useful b. more useful c. the most useful d. most usefully
- Mars is than Mercury.
a. cold b. colder c. coldest d. more cold
- The Sun is star in our solar system.
a. bright b. brighter c. the brightest d. more bright
- Mars is planet for scientists to explore.
a. interesting b. more interesting
c. the most interesting d. most interestingly

3 Pick a word from the box, and add it to a word below to make a compound word:

اختر كلمة من الصندوق، وأضفها إلى إحدى الكلمات أدناه لتكوّن كلمة مركّبة:

book – brush – fish – box – room

- star + =
- note + =
- lunch + =
- tooth + =
- bed + =



Test

on unit (5)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Aliaa watched a movie about a shiny spaceship. ()
2. The spaceship didn't reach a playground. ()
3. There was a friendly alien. ()
4. Aliaa enjoyed the story. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I always play on in the park.
a. swings b. football c. sky d. clouds
2. A is a group of many stars.
a. planet b. galaxy c. moon d. system
3. English is the subject.
a. easy b. easiest c. easier d. easier than
4. My new chair is than my old chair.
a. better b. good c. best d. the best

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****Way – museum – rings – Mars – solar**

Aliaa and her friends attended a space show. A guide explained the ⁽¹⁾ system. They saw the Sun, the Moon, and the small planets. The guide told them why ⁽²⁾ looks red. He showed them bigger planets like Jupiter and Saturn with its ⁽³⁾ They learned that all the stars belong to the Milky ⁽⁴⁾ galaxy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The Milky Way is a huge galaxy that has the Sun, Earth, and many stars. At night, it looks like a bright band stretching across the sky. It is shaped like a spinning circle filled with stars, gas, and dust. Inside it, there are planets, moons, comets, and asteroids. Our solar system is near the galaxy's edge, and Earth is the third planet from the Sun. The Milky Way is enormous, and light takes thousands of years to cross it.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about the Milky Way
a. galaxy b. star c. comet d. moon
2. The opposite of the underlined word "enormous" is
a. big b. tiny c. huge d. tall

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
.....
4. What does the Milky Way have?
.....
5. Why does light take thousands of years to cross the Milky Way?
.....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Lions are stronger (then) monkeys.
2. My mother is the (helpful) in the family.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. the largest – Jupiter – in – is – the solar system. – planet
.....
2. lesson – learn – What – Adam – did – yesterday?
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. Is sara Sabry an Egyptian astronaut
.....
2. Mercury, venus, and Mars are planets
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“Egypt’s first astronaut”

(travel into – hotter than – the solar system)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



Play Audio

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Sara Sabry is the first woman to travel into space.
a. Egyptian b. American c. French d. German
2. She the planets.
a. draws b. studies c. sees d. colors
3. Mercury is than Earth.
a. farther b. taller c. bigger d. smaller

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

screen – Mars – soil – system

Guide : Do you know what we study in the planetarium today?

Students : Yes! We are learning about the solar ⁽¹⁾

Guide : Great! Can you see the Sun and the Moon on the big ⁽²⁾ ?

Students : Yes, we can. Why does ⁽³⁾ look red?

Guide : It looks red because its ⁽⁴⁾ has a lot of iron.

(C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. In my opinion, science is than history.
a. interest b. interested c. not interesting d. more interesting
2. Yomna is the girl in the class.
a. tallest b. taller c. tall d. taller than
3. Our system is a part of the Milky Way.
a. moon b. solar c. planet d. comet
4. makes the job easier. I like working with my classmates.
a. Lunchbox b. Starfish c. Homework d. Teamwork

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

1. Elephants are heaviest than birds. (.....)
2. My dress is most colorful than your dress. (.....)
3. Food at this restaurant is the worse. (.....)
4. Summer is the hot season. (.....)

(D) ■■ Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I watched a new program last night. It's about space. It explained amazing facts about the Milky Way. The presenter said it is a huge spinning galaxy that holds the Sun, Earth, and billions of stars. The Milky Way also has planets, moons, comets, and asteroids. Our solar system is near the edge of the galaxy. Earth is the third planet from the Sun. The presenter added that light needs thousands of years to cross the galaxy because it is huge.

(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The new program is about animals. ()
2. The Milky Way is a huge spinning galaxy. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

3. Our solar system is near the of the galaxy.
a. edge b. center c. top d. bottom
4. Earth is the planet from the Sun.
a. first b. fourth c. second d. third
5. takes thousands of years to cross the Milky Way.
a. Air b. Wind c. Sound d. Light

(E) ✍ Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:

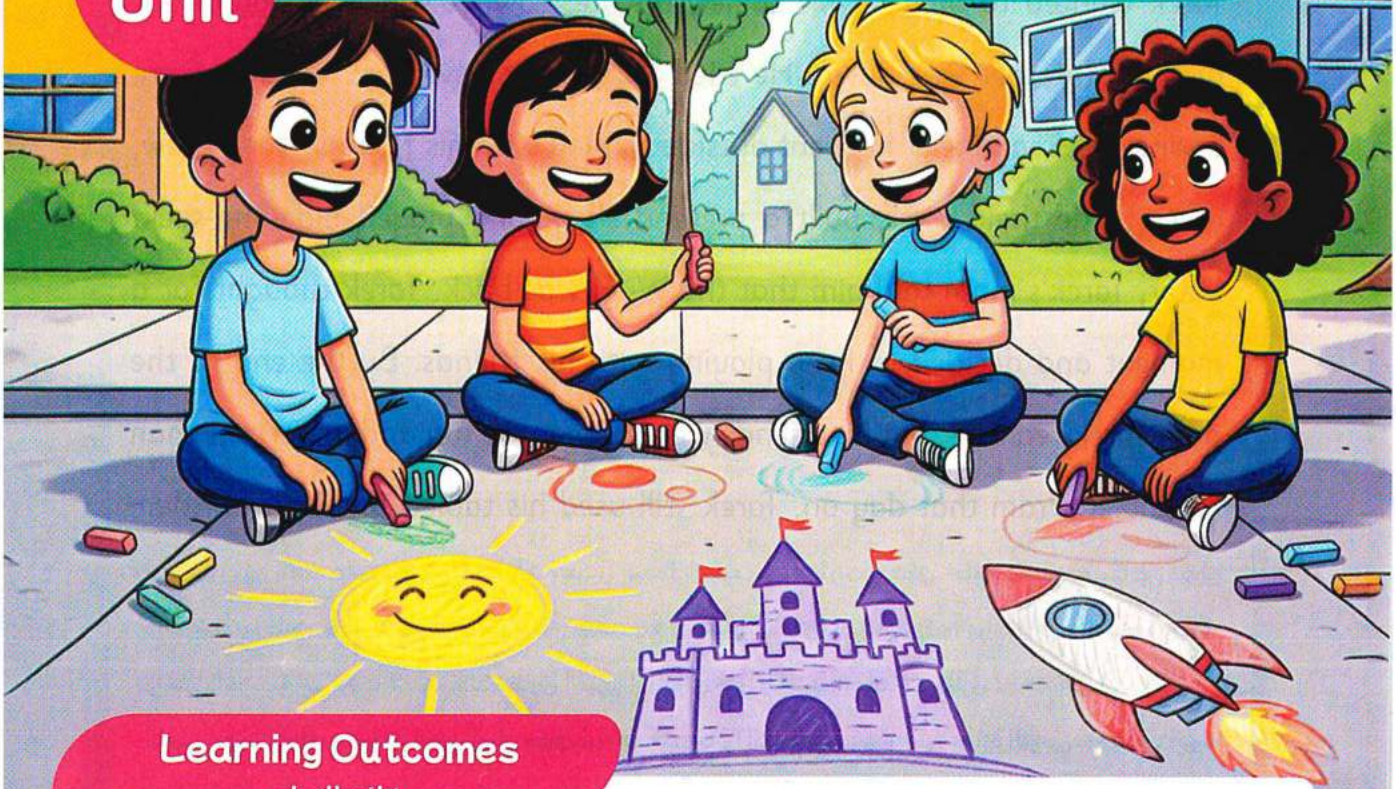
"Your science project"

(classmate – work – color – teamwork)

6

Unit

Offline but Happy



Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Retell the story "Offline but Happy" using their own words
- Discuss their own experiences about screen time and playing with friends
- Create a short role-play inspired by the story

• إعادة سرد قصة "Offline but Happy" باستخدام كلماتهم الخاصة

• مناقشة تجاربهم الخاصة عن وقت استخدام الشاشة واللعب مع الأصدقاء

• ابتكار مشهد تمثيلي قصير مستوحى من القصة

Listening

- Identify the gist
- Identify the key details
- Arrange events in the correct order after listening
- Answer comprehension questions about what they heard

• تحديد الفكرة الأساسية

• تحديد التفاصيل الأساسية

• ترتيب الأحداث ترتيبًا صحيحًا بعد الاستماع

• الإجابة عن أسئلة فهم متعلقة بما استمعوا إليه

Reading

- Correctly identify the story elements
- Recognize new vocabulary from the story in context
- Answer different level comprehension questions to show understanding of the text

• تحديد عناصر القصة بشكل صحيح

• تعرف مفردات جديدة واردة في القصة من خلال سياق

• الإجابة عن أسئلة فهم بمستويات مختلفة لإظهار فهم النص

Writing

- Write short paragraphs summarizing the story
- Write a short paragraph about "A Day without screens"
- Express personal opinions in writing

• كتابة فقرات قصيرة تلخص القصة

• كتابة فقرة قصيرة عن "A Day without screens"

• التعبير عن آراء شخصية كتابةً

Story Elements عناصر القصة

- Tarek wanted to play on his tablet, but he frowned when he found out that the Internet was down. He tried watching old videos, but they were boring. Feeling lonely, he went outside to play with his friends. They drew, raced, rode their bikes, built a pretend shop, and played hide-and-seek. Later, Tarek's mom told him that the Wi-Fi was back. Tarek thought for a moment and decided to keep playing with his friends. By the end of the day, Tarek realized that his friends were even more fun and important than his tablet. From that day on, Tarek still used his tablet, but only a little.

• أراد طارق أن يلعب على جهازه اللوحي، لكنه عبس عندما اكتشف أن الإنترنت معطل. حاول مشاهدة مقاطع فيديو قديمة، لكنها كانت مملة. شعر بالوحدة، فخرج ليلعب مع أصدقائه. رسموا، تسابقوا، ركبوا دراجاتهم، بنوا متجرًا تخيُّليًا، ولعبوا الغميضة. في وقت لاحق، والدته طارق أخبرته أن الواي فاي (الإنترنت) عاد. ففكر طارق لحظة وقرر الاستمرار في اللعب مع أصدقائه. مع نهاية اليوم، أدرك طارق أن أصدقائه كانوا أكثر متعة وأهمية من جهازه اللوحي. منذ ذلك اليوم فصاعدًا، ظل طارق يستخدم جهازه اللوحي، ولكن بقدر قليل.

Main Characters الشخصيات الرئيسية



Tarek



Amir



Laila



Dina

Other Characters شخصيات أخرى

- Tarek's mother

والدة طارق

**Setting** مكان وزمان الأحداث**Where and when the story happens** أين ومتى تحدث القصة

- **Where (Place):** Tarek's room and neighborhood, mainly the nearby park.

أين (المكان): غرفة طارق وحِيزه وخاصة الحديقة القريبة.

- **When (Time):** on Friday

متى (الوقت): في يوم الجمعة

Problem المشكلة**What goes wrong** ما الذي يجري بصورة خاطئة

- Tarek frowned and felt lonely and bored because the Internet was down, so he couldn't play a game on his tablet.

عبس طارق وشعر بالوحدة والملل لأن الإنترنت تعطل، لذلك لم يتمكن من لعب لعبة على جهازه اللوحي.

Solution الحل**How the problem was fixed** كيف تم حل المشكلة

- Tarek went outside to play with his friends. They drew on the sidewalk, raced to the park, rode their bikes, played hide-and-seek, and built a pretend shop. He felt happy again as he laughed so much that his stomach hurt.

خرج طارق يلعب مع أصدقائه. رسموا على الرصيف، تسابقوا إلى الحديقة، ركبوا دراجاتهم، لعبوا الغمضة، وبنوا متجرًا تخيّلًا. شعر بالسعادة مرة أخرى فضح كثيرًا حتى إن معدته كانت تؤلمه.

The moral of the story العبرة (الدرس المستفاد) من القصة**Lesson learned** الدرس المستفاد

- No tablet, phone, or screen can ever replace the joy of friendship.

لا يمكن لأي جهاز لوحي، أو هاتف، أو شاشة أن يحل محل متعة الصداقة.



Beginning

البداية

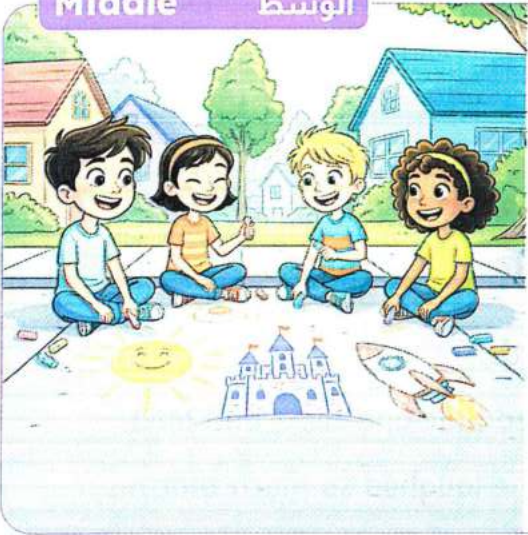


On a beautiful Friday morning, Tarek jumped out of his bed and grabbed his tablet to play a game and reach level 20, but the Internet was down. His mother suggested he do something fun outside, but Tarek frowned, thinking it was impossible to have fun without the Internet.

في صباح يوم جمعة جميل، قفز طارق من سريره وأمسك بجهازه اللوحي ليلعب لعبة ويصل إلى المستوى 20، لكن الإنترنت كان معطلاً. اقترحت عليه والدته أن يفعل شيئاً ممتعاً في الخارج، لكن طارق عبس، معتقداً أنه من المستحيل قضاء وقت ممتع دون الإنترنت.

Middle

الوسط



Tarek sat on his bed looking at his silent tablet. He tried watching old videos, but they weren't interesting. When he started feeling lonely, he went outside to play with his friends. Tarek had so much fun with his friends. When the Wi-Fi was back, Tarek chose to stay with his friends.

جلس طارق على سريره ينظر إلى جهازه اللوحي الصامت. حاول مشاهدة مقاطع فيديو قديمة، لكنها لم تكن شيقة. وعندما بدأ يشعر بالوحدة، خرج ليلعب مع أصدقائه. استمتع طارق كثيراً مع أصدقائه. عندما عاد الواي فاي (الإنترنت)، اختار طارق أن يبقى مع أصدقائه.

End

النهاية



Tarek watched the sunset with his friends under the big tree. From that day on, Tarek realized that real life is more fun. So, he used the tablet but only at the minimal use after spending time with his friends.

شاهد طارق غروب الشمس مع أصدقائه تحت الشجرة الكبيرة. منذ ذلك اليوم فصاعداً، أدرك طارق أن الحياة الواقعية أكثر متعة. لذلك، ظل يستخدم الجهاز اللوحي، لكن فقط بالحد الأدنى للاستخدام بعد قضاء وقت مع أصدقائه.

Story Vocabulary مفردات القصة

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:



tablet تابلت (جهاز لوحي)



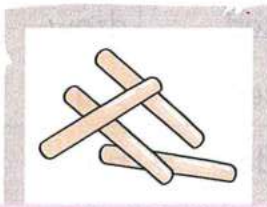
sidewalk رصيف



bored يشعر بالملل



chalk طباشير



sticks عصي/أعواد



sunset غروب الشمس

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

power button	زر التشغيل	message	إشعار/رسالة	stomach	معدة
smile	ابتسامة	maybe	ربما	whole	كل/طوال/بأكمله
dust	غبار/تراب	softly	بهدوء/بلطف	shelf	رف
sunshine	أشعة الشمس	castle	قلعة	joy	مرح/متعة
rocket ship	سفينة صاروخية	leaves	أوراق الشجر	proudly	بفخر
friendship	صداقة	hide-and-seek	الغميضة/الاستغماية	Internet connection	اتصال بالإنترنت

Adjectives الصفات

clear	صافي/واضح	fun	ممتع	impossible	مستحيل
silent	صامت	busy	مشغول	giant	عملاق
warm	دافئ	cool	بارد	minimal	الحد الأدنى/بأقل قدر
pretend	غير حقيقي/تخيلي	real	واقعي/حقيقي	beautiful	جميل
empty	فارغ	old	قديم		



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
grab يمسك	grabbed	blow تهبّ/ينفخ	blew
press يضغط	pressed	shake يهز	shook
frown يعبس	frowned	know يعرف	knew
sigh يتنهد	sighed	hurt يؤلم	hurt
miss يشفق/يفتقد	missed	draw يرسم	drew
wave يلوح	waved	say يقول	said
hand يناول/يسلم	handed	run يجري	ran
race يتسابق	raced	come يأتي	came
nod يهز رأسه موافقًا	nodded	sit يجلس	sat
place يضع	placed	sing يغنيّ/يغرّد	sang
replace يستبدل	replaced	find يجد	found

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

jumped out of قفز من	after a while, بعد فترة.
The Internet is down الإنترنت معطل	popped up ظهرت
One more round of جولة أخرى من	stepped outside خطا إلى الخارج
for a few minutes لبضع دقائق	run back inside يجري عائداً إلى الداخل
spend time يقضي وقتًا	Still nothing دون جدوى
From that day on, منذ ذلك اليوم فصاعدًا.	the best day ever أفضل يوم على الإطلاق
Out the window من النافذة	The Wi-Fi is back! عاد الواي فاي!
smiling from ear to ear يتسم من الأذن إلى الأذن	turn orange and pink تتحول إلى اللونين البرتقالي والوردي
They weren't interesting anymore. لم تكن شيقّة.	laughing louder than ever يضحك بصوت أعلى من أي وقت مضى



Definitions

تعريفات

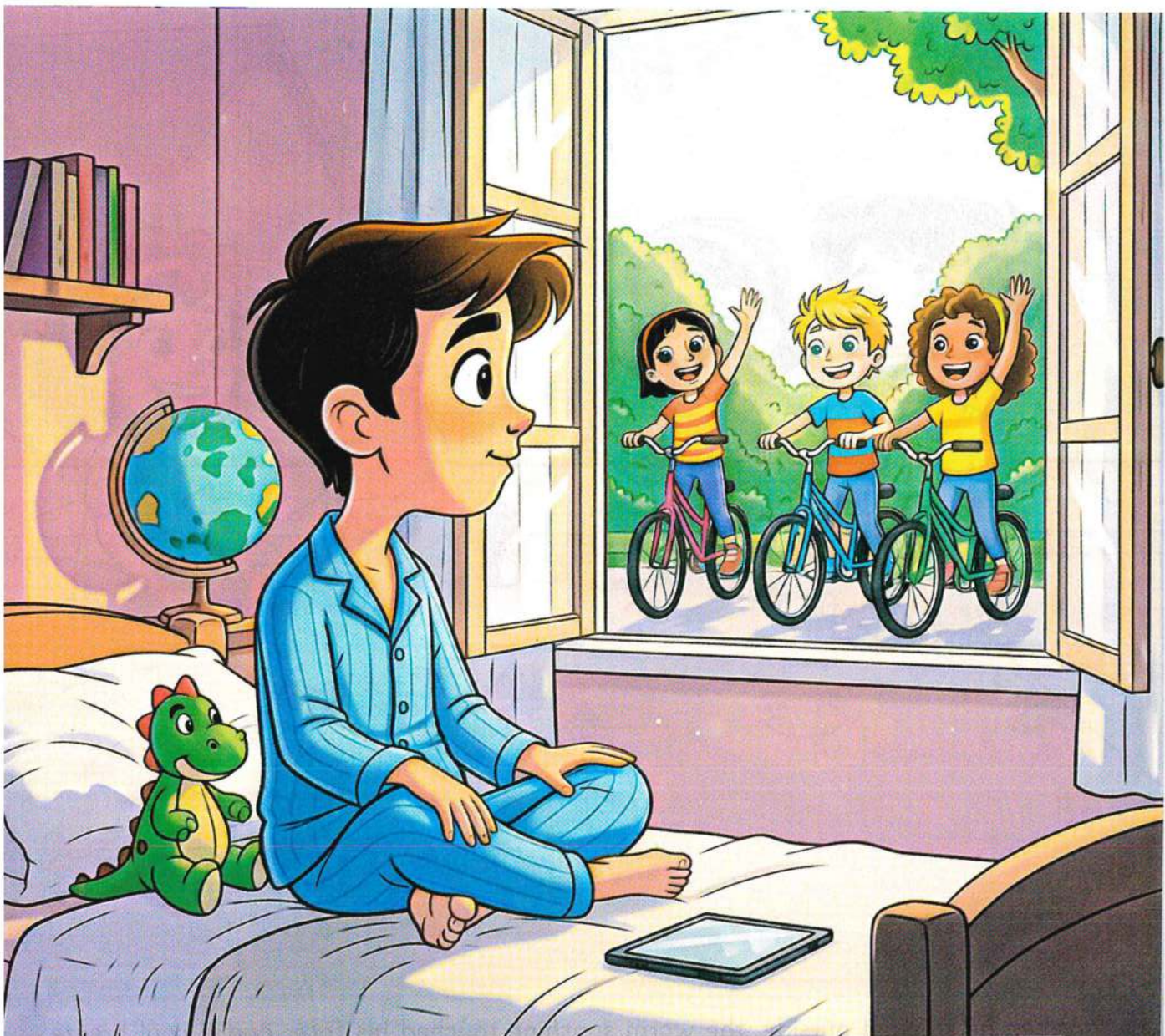
tablet (تابلت (جهاز لوحي)	IPad	a small flat computer you can hold in your hands, like an iPad	جهاز كمبيوتر مسطح صغير يمكنك حمله بين يديك، مثل الآيباد
Wi-Fi (واي فاي (إنترنت لاسلكي)		wireless Internet connection	اتصال لاسلكي بشبكة الإنترنت
level مستوى		a stage in a game or activity where you must complete tasks to move forward	مرحلة في لعبة أو نشاط حيث يجب عليك إكمال مهام للتقدم
excited مُتحمّس		very happy and full of energy	سعيد جدًا ومليء بالطاقة
bored يشعر بالملل		not interested or having nothing to do	غير مهتم أو ليس لديك ما تفعله
lonely وحيد		feeling sad because you are alone	تشعر بالحزن لأنك وحيد
ride يركب		to sit and move on a bike	أن تجلس وتتحرك على دراجة
call out ينادي		to shout so someone can hear you	أن تصبح حتى يسمعك شخص ما
whisper يهمس		to speak very softly	أن تتحدث بهدوء شديد
breeze نسيم		a light, gentle wind	رياح خفيفة، ولطيفة
sidewalk رصيف		the path beside a road where people walk	طريق بجانب الشارع يمشي عليه الناس
chalk طباشير		a soft white or colored stick used for writing or drawing	قطعة ناعمة بيضاء أو ملونة تُستخدم للكتابة أو الرسم

Beginning



It was a beautiful Friday morning. The sky was clear and blue, and the birds were singing in the trees. Tarek jumped out of bed, grabbed his tablet, and smiled. "Today I'll reach level 20!" he said proudly. He pressed the power button. The game started, but when he tried to play, a message popped up: "No Internet Connection!" Tarek frowned and tried again. Still nothing. "Mom! The Wi-Fi isn't working!" he called out. His mother walked in with a smile. "The Internet is down today. Maybe you can find something fun to do outside." Tarek sighed. "Fun? Without Wi-Fi? Impossible!"

كان صباح يوم جمعة جميلًا. كانت السماء صافية وزرقاء، والطيور تغرد على الأشجار. قفز طارق من سريره، أمسك جهازه اللوحي وابتسم. قال بفخر: «اليوم سأصل إلى المستوى 20!». ضغط زر التشغيل. بدأت اللعبة، لكن عندما حاول أن يلعب ظهرت له رسالة تقول: «لا يوجد اتصال بالإنترنت!». عبس طارق وحاول مرة أخرى، لكن دون جدوى. نادى: «أمي! الواي فاي لا يعمل!». دخلت والدته مبتسمة وقالت: «الإنترنت مُعطل اليوم، ربما تستطيع أن تجد شيئًا ممتعًا تفعله في الخارج». تنهد طارق قائلاً: «ممتعًا؟ دون واي فاي؟ مستحيل!».



He sat on his bed, looking at his silent tablet. The room felt empty and quiet. He tried watching old videos, but they weren't interesting anymore. Out the window, he saw Laila, Amir, and Dina laughing and running around with their bikes. Laila called: "Hey, Tarek! Come outside! We're going to the park!" Tarek shook his head. "No thanks! I'm... uh... busy!" But after a while, he started feeling lonely. He missed laughing and talking with his friends. The tablet was just a silent screen now. He looked at it again and said softly, "Maybe I'll just go for a few minutes."

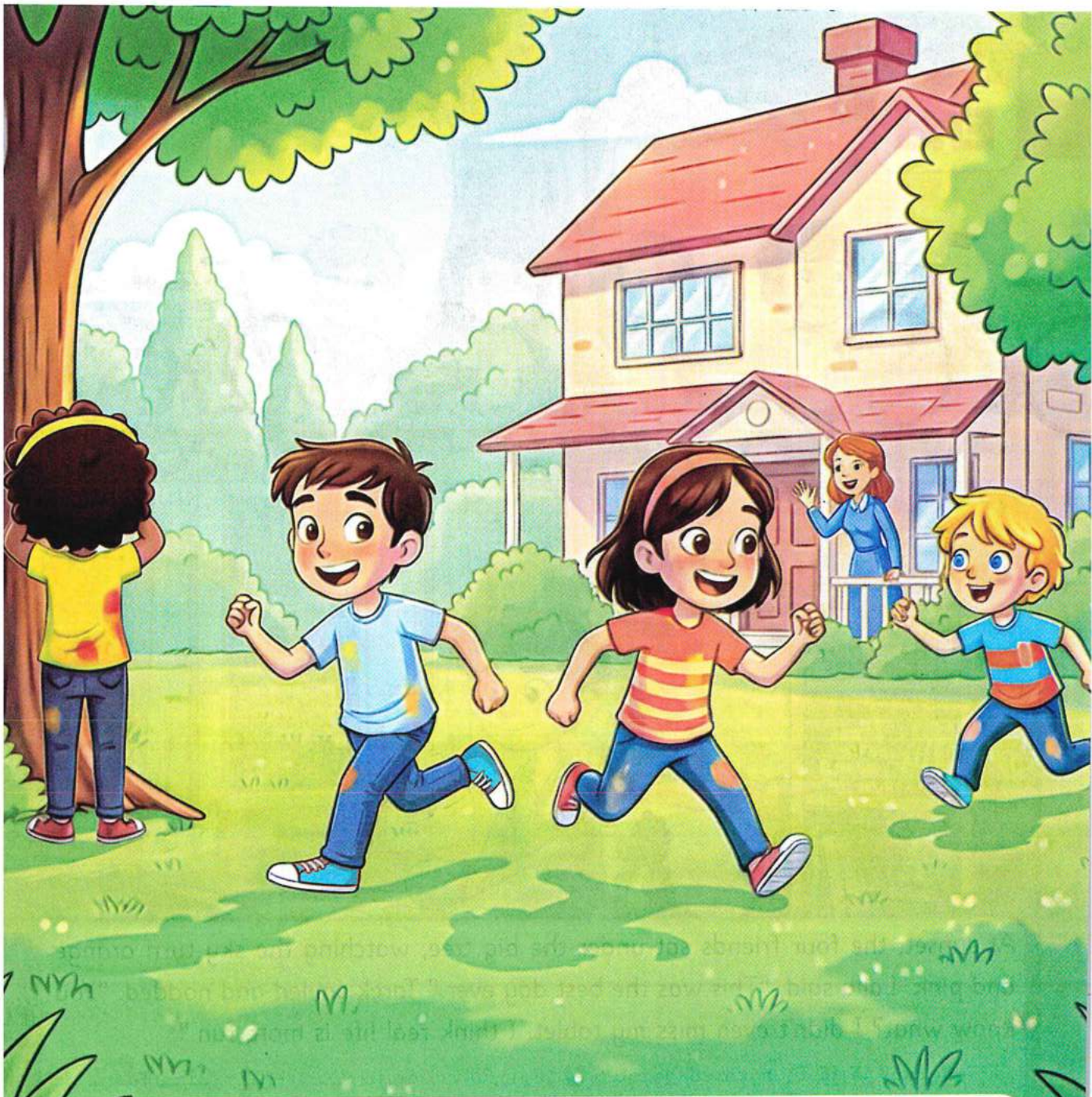
جلس طارق على سريره ينظر إلى جهازه اللوحي الصامت، بدت الغرفة فارغة وهادئة. حاول مشاهدة مقاطع فيديو قديمة، لكنها لم تكن شائعة بعد الآن. من النافذة، رأى ليلي، أمير، ودينا يضحكون ويركضون بدراجاتهم حول المكان. نادى ليلي: «مرحبًا، يا طارق! تعال إلى الخارج! نحن ذاهبون إلى الحديقة!» هز طارق رأسه: «لا شكرًا! أنا ... مشغول!» لكن بعد فترة، بدأ يشعر بالوحدة. افتقد الضحك والحديث مع أصدقائه. الجهاز اللوحي أصبح مجرد شاشة صامتة الآن. نظر إليه مرة أخرى وقال بهدوء: «ربما سأخرج لبضع دقائق فقط».

Middle



When he stepped outside, the warm sunshine touched his face, and a cool breeze blew through his hair. Laila smiled and waved. "You came! We're drawing on the sidewalk. Want to help?" She handed him a piece of colorful chalk. Together, they drew a giant smiling sun, a tall castle, and even a rocket ship. Then Amir shouted, "Let's race to the park!" They rode their bikes, laughing the whole way. At the park, they played hide-and-seek, and built a pretend shop with leaves and sticks. Tarek laughed so much his stomach hurt. "I forgot how much fun this is!" he said happily.

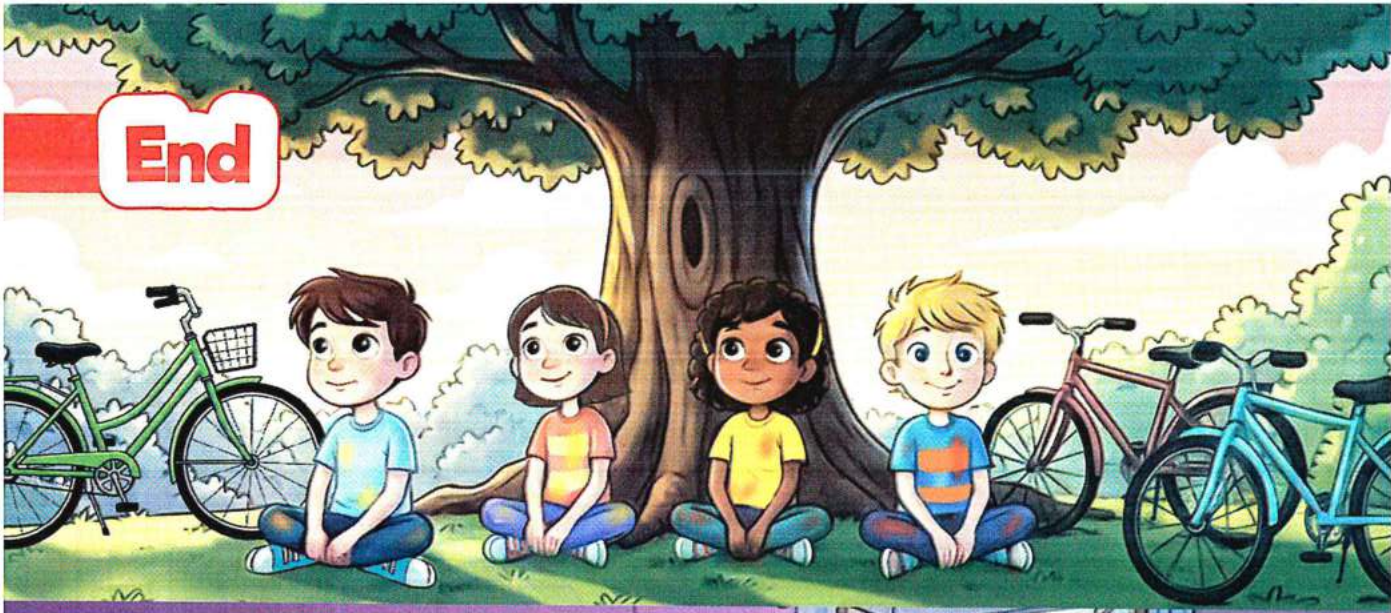
عندما خطا إلى الخارج، لامست أشعة الشمس الدافئة وجهه، وهبت نسمة باردة غير شعره. ابتسمت ليلي ولوّحت له قائلة: «أنت جئت! نحن نرسم على الرصيف، هل تريد أن تساعد؟» وناولته قطعة طباشير ملوّنة. معًا، رسموا شمسًا مبتسمة عملاقة، وقلعة عالية، وحتى سفينة صاروخية. ثم صاح أمير: «هيا لنسابق إلى الحديقة!» ركبوا دراجاتهم، وهم يضحكون طوال الطريق. في الحديقة، لعبوا الغقيضة وبنوا متجرًا تخيليًا من أوراق الشجر والأعواد. ضحك طارق كثيرًا حتى شعر بألم في معدته، وقال بسعادة: «لقد نسيت كم هو ممتع هذا!»



Later that afternoon, Tarek's mom called from the house, "Tarek! The Wi-Fi is back!" He stopped and looked at his friends. They were all covered in chalk dust and smiling from ear to ear. He thought for a second. Should he run back inside and play his game? Then Dina said, "Come on, Tarek! One more round of hide-and-seek!" Tarek smiled. "The Wi-Fi can wait!" And off he ran, laughing louder than ever.

لاحقًا بعد ظهر ذلك اليوم، نادى والدته طارق من المنزل: «يا طارق! عاد الواي فاي!» توقّف طارق ونظر إلى أصدقائه، كانوا جميعًا مغطين بغبار الطباشير ويتسممون من الأذن إلى الأذن. فكّر لثانية. هل يجب أن يجري عائداً إلى الداخل ويلعب لعبته؟ ثم قالت دينا: «هيا، يا طارق! جولة أخرى من الغمضة!» ابتسم طارق وقال: «الواي فاي يمكنه الانتظار!» ثم ركض بعيداً، وهو يضحك بصوت أعلى من أي وقت مضى.

End



At sunset, the four friends sat under the big tree, watching the sky turn orange and pink. Laila said, "This was the best day ever." Tarek smiled and nodded. "You know what? I didn't even miss my tablet. I think real life is more fun."

عند غروب الشمس، جلس الأصدقاء الأربعة تحت الشجرة الكبيرة يشاهدون السماء وهي تتحول إلى اللونين البرتقالي والوردي. قالت ليلي: «كان هذا أفضل يوم على الإطلاق». ابتسم طارق وهز رأسه موافقاً: «تعلمين؟ لم أفتقد حتى جهازي اللوحي. أعتقد أن الحياة الواقعية أكثر متعة».

When he went to bed that night, he placed his tablet on the shelf and whispered, "You're fun, but my friends are even more fun." From that day on, Tarek still used his tablet—but only at the minimal use after he spent time with his friends. Because he learned something important: No tablet, phone, or screen can ever replace the joy of friendship.

عندما ذهب طارق إلى سريره تلك الليلة، وضع جهازه اللوحي على الرف وهمس: «أنت ممتع، لكن أصدقائي أكثر متعة». منذ ذلك اليوم فصاعداً، ظل طارق يستخدم جهازه اللوحي، لكن فقط بالحد الأدنى للاستخدام بعد قضاء وقت مع أصدقائه. لأنه تعلم شيئاً مهماً: لا يمكن لأي جهاز لوحي، أو هاتف، أو شاشة أن يحل محل متعة الصداقة.

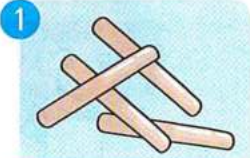
Story Practice

Vocabulary

1 Look and write:

انظر واكتب:

sidewalk – sunset – tablet – sticks – chalk – bored



2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

friendship – minimal – pretend – dust – round
– impossible – sighed – stomach

- 1 My hurts after eating too much candy.
- 2 She, wishing the day would end soon.
- 3 Let's play one more of this game.
- 4 Even help can still have good results.
- 5 She thought it was to solve the puzzle on her own.
- 6 His clothes were covered in
- 7 The child held a microphone and sang.
- 8 Our grows stronger every day.



Characters of the story

1 Read, look, and number:

اقرأ، انظر ورقم:

1 Tarek

2 Dina

3 Laila

4 Amir



2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

(A)

(B)

- 1 Laila ...
- 2 Tarek's mom ...
- 3 Tarek ...

- ☐ a forgot how much fun playing with friends is.
- ☐ b suggested he find something fun to do outside.
- ☐ c smiled and waved to Tarek.

3 Read then write the right characters:

اقرأ ثم اكتب الشخصيات الصحيحة:

- 1 She said, "Come on, Tarek! One more round of hide-and-seek!"
- 2 They sat under the big tree and watched the sunset.
- 3 She told Tarek they were going to the park.

4 Who said these words? Read and choose:

من قال هذه الكلمات؟ اقرأ واختر:

- 1 "The Wi-Fi isn't working!"
 - a. Tarek's mom
 - b. Tarek
- 2 "Let's race to the park!"
 - a. Amir
 - b. Dina
- 3 "This was the best day ever."
 - a. Laila
 - b. Dina



Events of the story

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The story took place on a beautiful morning.
a. Friday b. Sunday c. Tuesday d. Monday
- 2 When Tarek's friends invited him to play, he told them he was
a. bored b. tired c. busy d. ill
- 3 The four friends built a pretend shop with and sticks.
a. paper b. leaves c. bricks d. plastic
- 4 The four friends watched the under the big tree.
a. sunset b. sunrise c. moon d. movie

2 Put the events in the correct order:

ضع الأحداث في الترتيب الصحيح:

- ☐ a Tarek and his friends watched the sunset together under the big tree.
- ☐ b The Wi-Fi was back, but Tarek chose to stay with his friends.
- ☐ c He found out there was no Internet connection. He frowned and felt lonely.
- ☐ d Tarek realized that no device can replace the joy of friendship.
- ☒ e Tarek grabbed his tablet to play a game and reach level 20.
- ☐ f He decided to join his friends for a few minutes. They had a lot of fun together.

**3 Answer the following questions:**

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1 Where did the story take place?

2 What did Tarek do first after the room felt empty?

3 What did Tarek and his friends draw?

4 When did the Wi-Fi come back?

5 What did Tarek do when he went to bed?

4 Look, then write TWO (2) sentences to describe each scene using the word box:

انظر، ثُمَّ اكتب جُمْلَتَيْنِ (2) لوصف كل مشهد مستخدمًا صندوق الكلمات:



grab – frown – Internet

1

2



smile – play – chalk

1

2



Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Write (T) true or (F) false:

اكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

- 1 Tarek was excited to play his favorite game on his tablet in the morning. ☐
- 2 The Wi-Fi stopped working in Tarek's house. ☐
- 3 Tarek and his friends had fun drawing with chalk and riding their bikes. ☐
- 4 When the Wi-Fi came back, Tarek ran home immediately to play online. ☐
- 5 At the end, Tarek decided that screens are more fun than friends. ☐

2 Match the word with its definition:

صِل الكلمة بتعريفها:

(A)

(B)

- 1 ride
- 2 whisper
- 3 bored
- 4 sidewalk
- 5 call out

- ☐ a not interested or having nothing to do
- ☐ b to shout so someone can hear you
- ☐ c to speak very softly
- ☐ d to sit and move on a bike
- ☐ e the path beside a road where people walk

3 Read the story summary below and fill in the blanks using the correct words from the box: اقرأ ملخص القصة أدناه واملأ الفراغات مستخدماً الكلمات الصحيحة من الصندوق:

friends – tablet – Wi-Fi – bored – outside –
fun – lesson

Tarek was very excited to play on his ⁽¹⁾ On Friday morning, he grabbed his tablet, but the ⁽²⁾ stopped working. At first, he felt ⁽³⁾ and didn't know what to do. Then he looked out the window and saw his ⁽⁴⁾ playing ⁽⁵⁾ He decided to join them, and together they laughed and had so much ⁽⁶⁾ At the end of the day, Tarek learned an important ⁽⁷⁾ that real friendship is better than any screen.

Test

on unit (6)

(A) Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



1. Adam used to spend a lot of time studying in his room. ()
2. A warm sunlight went through Adam's window, so he went out. ()
3. Adam's friends were playing and racing on the sidewalk. ()
4. Adam didn't join his friends. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is a soft white or colored stick used for writing or drawing.
a. Chalk b. Pen c. Pencil d. Marker
2. We couldn't start the online class because there was no Internet
a. connection b. production c. communication d. direction
3. You can your tablet but only at the minimal use.
a. uses b. used c. use d. using
4. Noha going to race with her friends next weekend.
a. is b. am c. will d. was

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****excited – power button – level – down – back**

Tarek grabbed his tablet to play his favorite game. He wanted to pass a difficult (1) When he pressed the (2) and started the game, a message popped up: "No Internet Connection!" The Internet was (3) He sighed and looked out the window. Then, he decided to go out, (4) to find something fun to do.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Omar likes playing video games, but he knows it's important to use technology in a balanced way. One sunny morning, he grabbed his phone and called his friends to go to the park. They met on the nearby sidewalk, smiling from ear to ear and feeling excited. They rode their bikes and raced to the park. They had so much fun and never felt bored. At the end of the day, they promised not to spend too much time playing online games, knowing that gathering with friends is healthier and more fun than staring at screens.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined expression "smiling from ear to ear" means "They were very".
a. interested b. weak c. happy d. silent
- The friends to the park.
a. cycled b. drove c. ran d. walked

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

4. Where did the friends meet to go to the park?

.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

.....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The Wi-Fi wasn't working, so I (can't) play online.
2. Playing outside is (interesting) than playing on the tablet.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. handed – She – colorful – a piece of – him – chalk.
.....

2. forgot – much – I – is. – how – fun – this
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. He saw laila, Amir, and Dina laughing and running
.....

2. Should i run back inside and play my game
.....

8 Write a fiction story of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“A day without Internet connection”
(down – frown – learn)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 2

Vocabulary Summary

Unit 4 Jobs in the Animal Kingdom



police dogs



guide dogs



dolphins



horses

Unit 5 Our Solar System



The Sun



Moon



the solar system



galaxy



Saturn



Mars

Unit 6 Offline but Happy



tablet



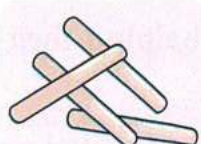
sidewalk



bored



chalk



sticks



sunset

Language Summary

Unit 4 Jobs in the Animal Kingdom

Present Simple Tense

- We use the "Present Simple" to talk about things that are always true (facts), or that happen regularly (jobs/habits).

Affirmative



I, You, We, They, Plural noun + **verb (infinitive)** ...
He, She, It, Singular noun + **verb (infinitive) + -s/-es/-ies** ...

- Ex: – I **read** a story every day.
– He **washes** the dishes after dinner.

Negative



Subject + **don't/doesn't** + **verb (infinitive)** ...

- Ex: – They **don't** eat unhealthy food.
– Hana **doesn't** play the guitar after school.

Yes/No question



Do/Does + subject + **verb (infinitive)** ...?

- Ex: – **Do** you travel in summer?
– **Does** Adam help his friends?

Wh-question



Question word + **do/does** + subject + **verb (infinitive)** ...?

- Ex: – Where **do** you sleep? – When **does** he exercise?

Present Continuous Tense

- We use the "Present Continuous" to talk about actions that are happening at this moment.

Affirmative



Subject + **am/is/are** + **verb + -ing** ...

- Ex: – They **are** helping their parents.

Negative



Subject + **am/is/are** + **not** + **verb + -ing** ...

- Ex: – He is **not** studying in the garden.

**Yes/No question**

?

Am/Is/Are + subject + verb + -ing ...?**Ex:** Are you listening to music now?– Yes, I **am**. – No, I **am not**.**Wh-question**

?

Question word + am/is/are + subject + verb + -ing ...?**Ex:** – What **is** she doing now? – She **is** having lunch.**Unit 5 Our Solar System****1. Comparatives**

- We use comparatives to show how two things are different.

- Short adjectives:

adjective + -er/-r/-ier + than

- Long adjectives:

more + adjective + than**Ex:** – A flower is **shorter than** a tree.– Amira is **nicer than** Sally.– Emad is **more careful than** his brother.**2. Superlatives**

- We use superlatives to show that one thing is the most in a group of three or more.

- Short adjectives:

the + adjective + -est/-st/-iest

- Long adjectives:

the most + adjective**Ex:** – Sami is **the smartest** student in the class.– Mount Everest is **the largest** mountain in the world.– The parrot is **the most colorful** bird.

- Some adjectives have different forms in comparatives and superlatives.

Ex: – good → **better** → **best**– bad → **worse** → **worst**– far → **farther** → **farthest**

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The water buffalo pulls the plough so Ali can prepare the soil. ()
2. The donkey can't carry the crops and tools to the market. ()
3. Falcons fly over Ali's house and catch rats. ()
4. Scarab beetles keep the soil healthy. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our solar system is part of a called the Milky Way.
 a. galaxy b. planet c. sun d. soil
2. I use my to do my homework, and I take it everywhere with me.
 a. computer b. tablet c. TV d. oven
3. This puzzle is than the last one.
 a. harder b. hardest c. hard d. the hardest
4. animals help humans?
 a. Does b. Are c. Do d. Doesn't

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****Wi-Fi – sunshine – sidewalk – trees – park**

I'm Sara. I always used to use my tablet all day. One day, the ⁽¹⁾ didn't work. At first, I felt sad because I didn't know what to do without the Internet. Then, my friends came, and we played in the ⁽²⁾ I liked the warm ⁽³⁾ and the cool breeze. We played hide-and-seek and drew on the ⁽⁴⁾ I didn't miss my tablet.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last night, Ahmed watched an exciting space movie at the movie theater. The screen was big and bright, and the colors were amazing. He saw shiny spaceships flying through the dark sky and aliens with big eyes waving from their planets. The sounds were very loud, like a real adventure. Ahmed imagined he was inside the movie. He laughed when the funny aliens talked and when the spaceships landed on the moon. When the movie ended, he felt happy and excited. He couldn't stop thinking about the bright stars and colorful planets.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "dark" is
a. bright b. black c. cloudy d. deep
2. Ahmed laughed when the talked.
a. spaceships b. stars c. aliens d. planets

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What was the movie about?

.....

4. What couldn't Ahmed stop thinking about?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....



(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I think this year's summer is hotter (then) last year's.
2. I'm (help) my brother right now.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. he – Should – inside – run – and – back – play – game? – his
.....
2. a wildlife – I'm – documentary – animals. – watching – about
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. What is the milky Way
.....
2. donkeys are strong and can carry heavy loads
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“A visit to a farm”

- What animals did you see on the farm?
- What tools did you see on the farm?
- What was the most interesting thing you learned?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Laila and Kareem visited the zoo on Friday. ()
2. They looked at a huge screen showing the Moon. ()
3. The planet Saturn has bright rings. ()
4. The solar system is inside a galaxy called the Milky Way. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a big paper with pictures and writing.
 a. project b. ring c. poster d. team
2. My dad is the cow. We are making cheese today.
 a. milking b. feeding c. cooking d. baking
3. Scarab beetles in the soil and help make the earth better.
 a. working b. works c. work d. worked
4. I think the Moon is beautiful than the Sun.
 a. more b. most c. the most d. good



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

space – planet – hotter – Mercury – sun

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She traveled into ⁽¹⁾ in 2022. She wants young people to believe in their dreams. Sara studied the solar system and learned that ⁽²⁾ is smaller than Earth, and Venus is ⁽³⁾ She says Jupiter is the largest ⁽⁴⁾ and Saturn has rings. Seeing Earth from space showed her how big our galaxy is.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Hana. I watched a wildlife documentary yesterday. I learned that egrets are important helpers on farms. A white egret in the documentary walks through a rice field and uses its sharp beak to catch insects. It eats many hoppers that harm the plants. Egrets also stay close to water buffaloes and even stand on their backs. They remove flies that annoy the buffalo. Since egrets eat hundreds of insects each day, farmers don't need to use many chemicals. Their long legs and white feathers make them easy to see in the fields.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the text is about
 a. egrets b. donkeys c. falcons d. buffaloes
- The underlined word "harm" means
 a. hurt b. help c. work d. make

(B) Answer the following questions:

- What do egrets remove from the water buffaloes?

- Why don't farmers need to use many chemicals?

- Summarize the text in one sentence.



(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. (Do) the egret help the farmer?
2. The Moon is (small) than the Earth.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. eat – Geckos – on – insects. – climb – and – walls
.....
2. planet, – Is – the largest – Jupiter – Youssef?
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. the room felt empty and quiet
.....
2. Are those rings around saturn
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“What do you do when you are offline?”

(tablet – friends – sunset)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Hassan is staring at his tablet. ()
2. The children drew with colors and rode their cars. ()
3. Hassan cried so much! ()
4. Hassan felt amazing to share fun with a friend instead of a screen. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think January is the month in the year.
 a. cold b. coldest c. colder d. more cold
2. A is an animal that protects others.
 a. guard dog b. cow c. sheep d. pigeon
3. The birds are in the sky.
 a. flying b. fly c. flew d. flies
4. helps us finish big projects faster.
 a. Traveling b. Teamwork
 c. Inspiring d. Watching over

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

sweaters – thick – safe – gently – warm

I am a sheep living on the farm. I eat grass all day and grow ⁽¹⁾ wool. A smart dog watches over me to keep me ⁽²⁾ Humans come once a year to cut my wool to make ⁽³⁾ I like helping them because my wool keeps people ⁽⁴⁾ Life on the farm is busy, but safe and fun.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ahmed is learning about the Milky Way at school. He discovers that it is the galaxy where Earth and the Sun are. It looks like a bright band of stars in the night sky and spins in a huge circle. Ahmed reads that it has over 200 billion stars, planets, moons, comets, and asteroids. Our solar system is part of it, and the Sun takes about 230 million years to travel around it. Ahmed thinks it's amazing that light takes 100,000 years to cross the Milky Way!

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "over" is
a. above b. more c. under d. equal
2. The galaxy in a huge circle.
a. walks b. runs c. flies d. spins

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

4. What else is in the Milky Way besides stars?

.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

.....



(C)



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. That was the (bad) shop in the city.
2. Birds (builds) nests in trees.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. do? – What – they – kind – jobs – of – do
.....
2. of – replace – Screens – friendship. – never – can – the joy
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. There may be other galaxies like the milky Way
.....
2. does a donkey eat insects and meat
.....

8 Write a fiction story of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“A trip through a galaxy”
(spaceship – planets – aliens)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Tests

Test

1

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Bees are small but very helpful. ()
2. They move from a flower to another. ()
3. Bees make honey that people don't enjoy eating. ()
4. Without bees, many plants would not live. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This bus is very We won't find empty seats.
a. fast b. empty c. nice d. crowded
2. A big paper with pictures and writing is called a
a. file b. poster c. desk d. watch
3. They had an because they disagreed about the answer.
a. argue b. argued c. argument d. argues
4. You touch the hot stove. You can burn your hands.
a. had b. have c. must d. mustn't



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

solar – band – cross – take – comets

The Milky Way is the galaxy that contains Earth and the Sun. It looks like a bright ⁽¹⁾ of stars. It has over 200 billion stars. It also has planets, moons, and ⁽²⁾ Near the edge of this huge galaxy, there is our ⁽³⁾ system. Light needs about 100,000 years to ⁽⁴⁾ this galaxy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My friend Mady lives in France. This summer, she's going to visit the Ras Mohamed National Park. When she arrives, she's going to set up her tent. The next morning, she's going to hike on a nature trail. She's going to snorkel and dive, too, as this park is famous for its white beaches and clear blue water. It has some of the best coral reefs in the world. She's going to take lots of photos to share happy moments with her family.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about a planned
 a. park b. presentation c. vacation d. class
- The underlined phrase "set up her tent" means to
 a. break b. crash c. make d. camp

(B) Answer the following questions:

- What is Mady's nationality?

- What does the underlined word "her" refer to?

- Why is Mady going to snorkel and dive?

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. The farmer is (milk) his cow now.
2. Which planet is the (far) from the sun?

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. Citadel. – to – see – I – Qaitbay – want – really

.....

2. felt – quiet. – room – empty – The – and

.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. it was a happy and fun place

.....

2. who wants to share their hobby

.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“The school clinic”

(bandages – injured – first aid kit)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

2

(A) Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



1. Our school held a talent competition last year. ()
2. Some children showed their skills in cycling and skating. ()
3. None of the students loved crafting with paper. ()
4. It was a boring event. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He has nothing to do. He's very
a. excited b. sick c. bored d. happy
2. She has a great for drawing. She always wins in the school competition.
a. roll b. box c. challenge d. talent
3. In a few days, we going to camp in the desert.
a. am b. is c. are d. have
4. A pigeon doesn't letters between different places anymore.
a. carry b. carries c. carried d. carrying

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****smell – calm – sad – rescue – lost**

A rescue dog plays an important role in saving lives during emergencies. It is trained to search for ⁽¹⁾ people in mountains and forests. Rescue dogs use their strong sense of ⁽²⁾ to find people quickly. They work with ⁽³⁾ teams. They stay ⁽⁴⁾ in dangerous situations. These brave dogs help bring hope and safety to many families.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt has many charity hospitals that help people who can't afford treatment. These hospitals offer free check-ups, medicines, and surgeries. Volunteers donate money to support the patients. One of these hospitals is Magdi Yacoub Heart Foundation in Aswan. It offers free heart surgeries for children and adults. The hospital has high-quality medical equipment and a skilled team of doctors trained in heart care. Patients receive excellent treatment, stay in clean rooms, and get strong emotional support. It gives hope to families and saves many lives every day.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Charity hospitals offer free check-ups,, and surgeries.
a. foods b. clothes c. sweets d. medicines
- The underlined word "donate" means " money to help".
a. taking b. giving c. lending d. carrying

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. How do volunteers support the patients?

.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You (having) to finish your homework before playing.
2. He has a (member). It allows him to enter the gym anytime.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. the first – astronaut. – is – Sara – Egyptian female – Sabry
.....
2. must – and – liquids. – You – warm – rest – drink
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. Should tarek run back inside and play his game
.....
2. My family and i will show you around
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“Packing for vacation”
(suitcase – ticket – travel)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

3

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The tour guide always meets tourists in the afternoon. ()
2. He takes tourists to different places around Egypt. ()
3. He never visits the Great Pyramids of Giza. ()
4. He tells tourists stories about ancient kings. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The doctor asked me to wait in the for tests.
a. examination room b. street
c. club d. park
2. Guide dogs help people move around without getting hurt.
a. bad b. blind c. young d. good
3. My bedroom is than my sister's room.
a. bright b. brighter c. brightest d. the brightest
4. I play tennis today. I hurt my shoulder.
a. can b. am able c. could d. couldn't



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

have – throat – clinic – exercise – check-up

I felt tired today. So I went to the ⁽¹⁾ The doctor asked me how I was feeling. He looked at my eyes, ⁽²⁾, and ears to make sure everything was fine. After the ⁽³⁾, he told me that I looked a little weak. He advised me to eat healthy food and ⁽⁴⁾ more.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

57-3-57 is a well-known hospital in Cairo that provides free medical care for children. It depends on donations from kind people, which support both the children and their families. The friendly staff guide patients through check-in, medical examinations, and treatment plans. Playrooms, libraries, and teachers help children feel safe, have fun, and continue learning while receiving care. The hospital is recognized worldwide for its excellent service, showing how teamwork and donations can bring hope, health, and happiness to every child.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "check-in" means "reporting your at the hospital".
 a. feeling b. arrival c. leaving d. stay
- The underlined word "their" refers to the ".....".
 a. children b. families c. kind people d. staff

(B) Answer the following questions:

- How can 57-3-57 provide free care to children?

- In what ways do playrooms and libraries help the children at 57-3-57?

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. Is Maysa going to (**cooking**) koshari tomorrow?
2. Hady is a lawyer. He (**work**) in a court.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. jobs – of – What – they – do? – kinds – do
.....
2. share – student – a special – Each – would – talent.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. Many people in egypt donate money to the hospital
.....
2. can you name a big planet
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“A visit to the planetarium”

(planet – red – rings)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

4

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Egypt. ()
2. The hospital is very small. ()
3. People in Egypt donate money to support the hospital. ()
4. The hospital doesn't have playrooms and libraries. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I will pack my to take amazing photos.
a. sunscreen b. camera c. sunglasses d. toothbrush
2. means making something with your hands.
a. Cycling b. Solving c. Riding d. Crafting
3. Jupiter is planet in the solar system.
a. large b. larger c. largest d. the largest
4. Listen! She
a. sing b. sings c. singing d. is singing



sing – run – stories – talents – solve

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
 a. people b. donkeys
 c. farmers d. water buffaloes
2. Geckos are small
 a. birds b. fish c. lizards d. insects

(B) Answer the following questions:

- ### 3. How do falcons help farmers?

.....

4. How many animals are mentioned in the text?

[illegible]

5. What does the text talk about?

=====

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You (mustn't) wash your hands before eating.
2. She (can't) play the guitar when she was younger.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. pack – you – Did – suitcase, – your – Sara?

.....

2. officers – lost – find – Police dogs – people. – help

.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. I see the planets: mercury, Venus, and Mars

.....

2. Did amir play hide-and-seek at the park

.....

8 Write a fiction story of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“A trip in a spaceship”

(rocket – alien – space)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

5

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The first aid kit is kept in the nurse's room. ()
2. The kit has bandages and plasters inside. ()
3. Students must tell a teacher if someone is injured. ()
4. Students can open the first aid kit whenever they want. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Visitors must show their before they enter the museum.
a. menus b. tickets c. posters d. shirts
2. When the weather became very cold, we wore our warm to school.
a. bowls b. stickers c. sweaters d. towels
3. My bag is than my sister's.
a. heavy b. the heaviest c. heavier d. most heavy
4. We are visit the new science museum next Friday.
a. going to b. go c. going d. goes to



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

galaxy – planet – Mars – Mercury – Saturn

At the space museum, Amina and Omar learn about space. They see the Sun and the Moon and learn that ⁽¹⁾ is called the “Red Planet”. They also discover that ⁽²⁾ is the smallest planet in the solar system. The guide shows them the rings around ⁽³⁾ He explains that all the stars they see belong to a huge ⁽⁴⁾

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Next weekend, our class will visit Wadi El Gemal Park for a camping trip. We will pack warm clothes, a torch, and water bottles before leaving. When we arrive, we will set up our tents near the mountains and learn about desert plants and animals. In the evening, we will sit around the campfire, tell stories, and take photos. The next morning, we will hike along a nature trail to look for birds. Before returning home, we will clean the campsite to keep it tidy.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined phrase “pack” means “..... things in a bag”.
 a. eating b. putting c. buying d. baking
- The underlined pronoun “it” refers to
 a. home b. campsite
 c. bird d. natural trail

(B) Answer the following questions:

- What will the students pack for the trip?

- What will the class do in the evening?

- What is the main idea of the text?

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. Water (is boiling) at 100° C.
2. We (must) cross the street when the lights are red.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. jobs? – Did – some animals – know that – real – you – have

.....

2. quickly – puzzles – people – finish – today. – can – Some

.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. how are you feeling today

.....

2. horses help people feel calm and happy

.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“A day on the farm”

(field – milking – barn)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

6

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The documentary is about plants. ()
2. The egret can't walk in water. ()
3. It eats the flies that bother buffaloes. ()
4. Farmers use more chemicals because of egrets. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An travels into space.
a. doctor b. astronaut c. teacher d. nurse
2. I run when I was a baby.
a. can b. can't c. couldn't d. am
3. What does Laila after school?
a. does b. doesn't c. did d. do
4. Falcons are helpful. They hunt small animals that crops.
a. find b. water c. damage d. plant

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****scissors – safe – take – nurse – injuries**

At our school, there is a first aid kit in the sports room. It has everything needed for small ⁽¹⁾ Inside the kit, there are ⁽²⁾, plasters, and spray for cuts. If a student gets hurt, the ⁽³⁾ checks the first aid kit and helps quickly. Students mustn't touch the first aid kit alone. Keeping it full and clean helps everyone stay ⁽⁴⁾

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

One day, Ali was bored. He had a lot of free time. He decided to start a new enjoyable hobby. First, Ali talked with his dad about what interests him. Ali wanted to choose a hobby that matched his passion. So he chose crafting with paper. Next, he gathered what he needed. He got colored paper, glue, markers, and scissors. Then, he started practicing simple shapes to improve a little each day. Finally, he participated in his school art show. Everyone was amazed by his art. He won the first prize.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali gathered items to start his new hobby.
a. three b. five c. four d. six
2. The underlined word "his" refers to
a. dad b. Ali c. day d. hobby

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined word "crafting" mean?

.....

4. Why did Ali choose crafting with paper as a hobby?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You don't have (at) bring your coloring pencils every day.
2. My friend Hana never (going) to school by bus.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. bus – Do – have – you – tickets? – our
.....
2. organized – corner. – Hala – reading – a – and Salma
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. where do you like to cycle, lara?
.....
2. sara Sabry inspires me to follow my dream
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Your favorite hobby"

- What do you do in your free time?
 - When can you practice it?
 - Where do you practice it?
-
-
-
-

Test

7

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Omar feels unwell. ()
2. He has a cough and a fever. ()
3. His mother takes him to the park. ()
4. Omar must play and drink cold liquids. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I enjoy with paper. Making shapes with it is my hobby.
a. cycling b. crafting c. singing d. solving
2. My father travel in a few hours.
a. is b. goes c. is going to d. is going
3. A/An helps when someone is injured. She works at a hospital.
a. engineer b. teacher c. student d. nurse
4. Look! The plane above us!
a. fly b. flies c. flying d. is flying

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

nature – notebook – show – progress – make

Trying a new hobby can be exciting and fun. It helps you ⁽¹⁾ new friends. First, think about what you enjoy most, like books, sports, or ⁽²⁾ Next, choose a hobby that fits your interests. Then, collect what you need, such as a ⁽³⁾, a ball, or a small plant. Start slowly and practice. Enjoy sharing your ⁽⁴⁾ with others.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Next week, Mr. Sami and his family are traveling to Egypt for a one-week holiday. They are packing light clothes, caps, and sunscreen because the weather will be hot. Their trip begins in Cairo, where they will visit the Pyramids and learn about ancient kings. After that, they are flying to Aswan to enjoy a Nile boat ride because the children love the river. They will also visit Hurghada to swim and see colorful fish. Finally, they are spending two days in Alexandria to relax on the beach and enjoy the sea view together.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The trip begins in
 a. Luxor b. Cairo c. Alexandria d. Aswan
2. The opposite of the underlined adjective "light" is
 a. big b. small c. heavy d. colorful

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined word "Their" refer to?

4. Why will Mr. Sami and his family visit Hurghada?

5. What is the text mainly about?

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. Juice is the (cold) drink on the table.
2. Hana can't (played) basketball.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. did – feel – Tarek – yesterday? – Why – bored

.....

2. to – body – Exercise – your – strong. – keep

.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. how does a farmer help animals

.....

2. we're finally going to travel to alexandria.

.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“Helpful animals”

(pull – donkeys – crops)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

8

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Maya plans to share her drawing. ()
2. Adam wants to play the guitar. ()
3. Nour likes taking photos. ()
4. Hobbies are special and fun to share. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a small lizard that eats insects inside houses.
a. snake b. gecko c. falcon d. bee
2. You eat too much sugar. It's unhealthy.
a. mustn't b. must c. has to d. have to
3. A beach is a place near the sea.
a. snowy b. windy c. small d. sandy
4. A snake is scariest animal.
a. the most b. than c. the d. more



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

find – dolphins – happy – safely – brave

Some animals have real jobs that help people in important ways. Police dogs are ⁽¹⁾ and smart. They use their strong noses to ⁽²⁾ lost people and catch criminals. Guide dogs help blind people walk ⁽³⁾ and cross streets. Horses make sad or scared people feel calm. In some countries, rescue ⁽⁴⁾ help people who are in danger at sea.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hospital 57-3-57 is one of the most important children's hospitals in Cairo. It is well-known because it gives free treatment to every child who needs care. Families feel safe because many people donate money to support the hospital. When children arrive, the receptionist welcomes them, and a nurse guides them to the testing area. Doctors then explain the steps of treatment clearly. There are playrooms, books, and art corners to help children feel calm. Teachers also help them study during their stay. This hospital shows how kindness can change children's lives.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When the children arrive at the hospital, the receptionist them.
a. welcomes b. treats c. checks d. tests
2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the
a. treatment b. care c. money d. hospital

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined adjective "free" mean?
.....

4. Why do families feel safe?
.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What is Youssef (write) at the moment?
2. I (are) going to swim later.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. What – the – is – Way? – Milky
.....
2. can – Egrets – of insects – hundreds – every day. – eat
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. tarek grabbed his tablet and smiled
.....
2. what should you do when you feel sick
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“My school camping trip”
(warm – campsite – tell)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

9

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. ()
2. She became the first Arab engineer to travel into space. ()
3. Sara inspires young people to follow their dreams. ()
4. Sara didn't realize how small Earth is in the universe. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The room is so I didn't have time to tidy it up.
a. clean b. messy c. clear d. noisy
2. We went hiking in the morning and told stories by the at night.
a. campfire b. fridge c. chair d. sink
3. We travel to France next week.
a. are going b. were going to c. are going to d. is going to
4. We don't take medicine when we are fine.
a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. should d. have to



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

progress – interests – practice – perfect – movement

Starting a new hobby brings enjoyment and creativity into daily life. First, think about what you truly love and try different activities to find out your ⁽¹⁾ Next, bring the basic things and tools you need. Then, ⁽²⁾ your hobby regularly. Don't get disappointed if you're not ⁽³⁾ at first. Learning takes time and needs patience. Keep practicing, and you will be surprised at your ⁽⁴⁾

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

In many parts of Egypt, animals still help people in useful ways. On farms, camels pull heavy tools to prepare the land for growing food. In villages, small horses carry bags of vegetables and water through busy streets. Owls help farmers at night by hunting mice that harm the crops. In towns by the sea, trained dogs help fishermen by guarding boats. Even tiny ants clean the soil by breaking down leaves. Each animal plays an important role and shows how people and animals can work together in daily life.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about how animals people.
a. help b. eat c. live d. see
- The underlined word "land" means ".....".
a. floor b. wall c. sea d. soil

(B) Answer the following questions:

- How do owls help farmers?
.....

- Where do trained dogs help fishermen?
.....

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. They call for healthcare services that are (**access**) to everyone.
2. What is (**worst**) thing that can happen?

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. me – Please – know – you – if – let – come. – can
.....
2. show – Hobbies – people – also – how – grow. – to
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. what kind of jobs do they do
.....
2. He is egyptian, but he moved abroad many years ago
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“Safety at our school”

(first aid – nurse – accidents)

Al-Azhar Test

10

(A) Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Sara Sabry is an astronaut from
a. Italy b. Egypt c. India d. Brazil
2. On her trip into space, she learned about the
a. oceans b. solar system c. mountains d. forests
3. Sara realized how Earth is in the universe.
a. dark b. noisy c. small d. broken

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

excitement – leadership – arrangement – discussion

Asmaa: Did you hear about the new Reading Club at our school?

Hana : No, what is the ⁽¹⁾ for this club?

Asmaa: It's simple. Each student brings a book they like to start a small ⁽²⁾ about it.

Hana : That sounds nice! I can't imagine the ⁽³⁾ that everyone feels.

Asmaa: The teacher said this club would help students learn ⁽⁴⁾, too.

(C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Police officers usually use police dogs to catch
a. horses b. streets c. criminals d. dolphins
2. Your illness is You'll take this medicine and you'll be fine.
a. curable b. cured c. cure d. curing
3. When I was seven, I read well at school.
a. couldn't b. must c. can't d. can
4. A is a large bag for clothes when traveling.
a. beach b. ticket c. suitcase d. trip

**4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:**

1. He sang the new song happy. (.....)
2. Look! The bird holds an insect in its mouth. (.....)
3. Some people think that Paris is beautiful than London. (.....)
4. You have to keeping your hands clean. (.....)

(D) Reading Comprehension**5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Omar didn't feel well when he arrived at school on Monday. He felt sick, and his head hurt badly. During class, he started to cough, and his teacher noticed his sore throat. When she checked him, she knew he had a fever. The teacher called Omar's mother, and she took him to the clinic. The doctor said Omar needed rest, warm drinks, and no cold food. Omar's mother bought his medicine, and Omar hoped he would feel better the next day.

(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Omar didn't feel well at school on Tuesday. ()
2. Omar's mother bought him his medicine. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

3. Omar's teacher knew that Omar had a
a. headache b. fever c. stomachache d. toy
4. The underlined word "clinic" means "a place where people go for a check-up".
a. good b. strong c. talented d. sick
5. The doctor said that Omar needed
a. warm food b. ice cream c. juice d. water

(E) Writing**6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:**

"Your visit to a farm"
(sheep – barn – carts – cows)

Listening Scripts

Lesson (1) Practice

Unit (1)

Page 15

Our school will hold a talent competition next week. Many students are excited to join. Yara plans to show her drawing and paper crafts, while Hazem will play the piano and sing. Nour wants to read a short story she wrote. Everyone believes the event will be fun, and the teacher encourages them to share their hobbies proudly.

Unit (2)

Page 52

Karim didn't feel well in the morning, so his sister Lina told their mother. They took him to the clinic to see the doctor. The nurse guided Karim to the room, and the doctor listened carefully. Karim said he had a headache and a cough. After the check-up, his mother went to the pharmacy to get his medicine, and Karim hoped to feel better soon.

Unit (3)

Page 87

Soha is going to travel to New Alamein City tomorrow. She is very excited. She packed her suitcase. She put in her summer clothes, swimming suit, camera, and toothbrush. She didn't forget to pack her sunscreen. Her father booked the tickets, and they are going to travel by bus. She can't wait to swim in the sea and build sandcastles by the beach.

Unit (4)

Page 133

Cats can help people feel calm and happy. Some cats stay with elderly people who live alone, and their quiet behavior makes others feel much better. Cats are smart and can feel when someone is sad or scared. They stay near their owners and help them feel calm. Spending time with a sweet cat can really help people.

Unit (5)

Page 174

Today at school, I learned some interesting facts about our great galaxy. It's called the Milky Way. It has The Sun, the Moon, planets, and so many stars. The largest planet is Jupiter. The small ones are Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars. Saturn is famous for its shiny rings. Mars is called the Red Planet because its soil is rich in iron.

Unit Tests

Unit (1)

Page 42

Hobbies are activities we enjoy in our free time. They help us relax, have fun, and learn new skills. Some people like playing board games, solving puzzles, cycling, or painting. Hobbies also help us grow and become more patient, creative, and strong. Clubs and group activities, like a Hobby Club, let students share their skills with friends and enjoy learning together.

**Unit (2)****Page 77**

To stay healthy, we should take care of our bodies every day. It's important to wash our hands, especially before meals. Eating good food like fruits and vegetables gives us energy. Sleeping enough hours at night helps our body and brain relax. Moving our bodies through running and simple exercises keeps us strong and active.

Unit (3)**Page 112**

Wadi El Gemal Park is a beautiful campsite in Egypt. People go there to enjoy nature. They stay in tents and use torches. In the morning, they hike on nature trails and take photos of animals and plants. In the evening, they sit around a campfire and tell stories. They always keep the campsite clean. Camping is so much fun!

Unit (4)**Page 164**

In Egypt, many animals help people every day. Water buffaloes pull ploughs on farms, and donkeys carry heavy loads to markets. Pigeons carry messages between places. Falcons protect crops by hunting small animals. Geckos eat insects in homes, and scarab beetles improve the soil. These animals show how people and animals work together in helpful ways.

Unit (5)**Page 202**

Last night, Aliaa read a fiction story. It was about a shiny spaceship flying into the dark

sky. In the story, the spaceship reached a bright playground in space with glowing swings, colorful slides, soft clouds, and a rolling star-ball. There was a friendly alien who played football with children. Aliaa enjoyed the story and loved imagining the fun space world.

Unit (6)**Page 224**

Adam used to spend a lot of time in his room trying to reach the next level of his game. One morning, a cool breeze blew through his window, so he went out for a break. His friends were playing and racing on the sidewalk. Adam joined them and realized that real fun was waiting outside, not on a screen.

Al-Azhar Tests**Unit (1)****Page 45**

Hobbies are things we enjoy in our free time. They help us relax and have fun. Hobbies can be activities such as cycling, playing board games, solving puzzles, and painting. Hobbies also help us learn new skills and spend time with friends.

Unit (2)**Page 80**

Last Monday, Omar felt sick when he arrived at work. He tried to continue, but his headache got stronger, so he went home early. He took a sick leave on that day. He spent the day resting, drinking warm tea, and he felt much better at night.

**Unit (3)**

Page 115

Elisia is going to visit Egypt next summer. She is going to stay in Alexandria. She wants to see Qaitbay Citadel and swim in the sea.

Unit (4)

Page 167

I am watching a wildlife documentary about animal helpers right now. The narrator says that egrets help farmers by eating insects that harm crops. On the screen, a white egret is standing in a field. The egret quickly catches hoppers with its sharp beak.

Unit (5)

Page 205

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian woman to travel into space. She wants to inspire young people. She studies the solar system and the planets. She explains that Mercury is smaller than Earth and Venus is hotter than Earth.

Reviews (1&2)**Review (1) – Test (1)** Page 120

My name is Lily. I can't wait to visit Egypt! Dad always told us stories about the pharaohs, so I really want to see the Pyramids and the Sphinx. I also want to ride a felucca on the Nile. I think Luxor and Aswan will be amazing. I hope we can swim in Alexandria's beautiful sea and build big sandcastles together.

Review (1) – Test (2) Page 123

My name is Hala. I donate money to Hospital 57-3-57. It is a famous children's hospital

in Cairo. It helps children who are sick. Seeing the hospital's playrooms, libraries, and friendly staff shows that the children are safe and happy. My donations help them get treatment and hope. The teamwork between donors, doctors, and nurses makes a big difference in every child's life.

Review (1) – Test (3) Page 126

I'm Asmaa. I want to try something exciting and new! Starting a hobby is easy. It brings me joy and helps me make friends. First, I think about what I love, like music, art, or cycling. Then, I get what I need and start practicing. I enjoy my progress and share it with family or friends. Hobbies are fun!

Review (2) – Test (1) Page 230

I'm Ali. I am a farmer, and many animals help me every day. My water buffalo pulls the plough so I can prepare the soil for planting. My donkey carries crops and tools to the market. Falcons fly over my fields and catch rats that harm my plants. Geckos eat insects near my home, and scarab beetles keep the soil healthy.

Review (2) – Test (2) Page 233

Laila and Kareem visited the planetarium on Friday. They looked at a huge screen showing the Sun and the planets. The guide explained that Mars is red, Jupiter is the largest planet, and Saturn has bright rings. Laila loved seeing the stars. Kareem was amazed to learn that the solar system is inside the Milky Way galaxy.

**Review (2) – Test (3)** Page 236

I am Adam. I was playing outside with Omar and Maged when we saw Hassan staring at his tablet. We called him to join us. At first, he said no, but then he came out. We drew with chalk, rode our bikes, and played hide-and-seek. Hassan laughed so much! It felt amazing to share fun with a friend instead of a screen.

Final Tests**Test (1)** Page 239

Bees are amazing animal helpers. They are small but very helpful. They play an important role in nature. They move from a flower to a flower, spreading pollen. This helps plants grow fruits, vegetables, and seeds. Bees live in hives and work together as a strong team. They make honey that people enjoy eating. Without bees, many plants would not live. This makes bees true natural heroes.

Test (2) Page 242

Our school held a talent competition last week. Many students joined. Some children showed their skills in cycling and skating, moving confidently around the playground. Others enjoyed painting colorful pictures or singing their favorite songs. A few students impressed everyone by playing the piano beautifully. Many also loved crafting with paper. They created creative shapes. It was an exciting event.

Test (3) Page 245

A tour guide's job is full of excitement. He always meets tourists in the early morning. He takes them to different places around Egypt. He visits the Great Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx. He tells tourists stories about ancient kings. He travels to Luxor to explore the temples of Karnak and Luxor. He also leads a Nile cruise to Aswan.

Test (4) Page 248

Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Egypt. The hospital is very big and helps children who are sick. All treatment is free for the children in the hospital. People in Egypt donate money to support the hospital. It has examination rooms, playrooms, libraries, and other fun places. Hospital 57-3-57 is full of hope, and it shows that teamwork helps children.

Test (5) Page 251

At school, the nurse keeps a big first aid kit in her room. It has bandages, plasters, scissors, and medicine. If a student gets hurt, the nurse must help them and check the kit. Students must tell a teacher when someone is injured and mustn't open the kit alone. The nurse keeps it clean, ready, and safe for everyone.

Test (6) Page 254

I am watching a documentary about animals that help farmers. It shows a white egret catching insects that harm rice plants. The



bird walks easily in water and often works near water buffaloes. It eats the flies that bother them, and the buffaloes don't mind. Farmers use fewer chemicals because egrets eat hundreds of insects each day.

Test (7)

Page 257

Omar feels very tired and unwell. He has a headache, a cough, a sore throat, and a fever. His mother takes him to the doctor. At the clinic, the doctor says Omar looks weak, but it's not serious. Omar must rest, drink warm liquids and avoid ice cream. His mother takes him to get the medicine so he can feel better soon.

Test (8)

Page 260

The teacher at school announces a hobby talent show for next week. Maya plans to share her drawing, painting, and paper crafts. Adam wants to play the piano and sing. He also enjoys puzzles and board games. Nour likes writing stories and journals. Everyone is excited, and the teacher reminds the class that hobbies are special and fun to share.

Test (9)

Page 263

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut and the first Arab engineer to travel into space in 2022. She inspires young people to follow their dreams. She studied the solar system. After returning from space, Sara explained how each planet is different from Earth. She describes the Sun, the Moon, and the stars in our huge galaxy, realizing how small Earth is in the universe.

Test (10)

Page 266

Sara Sabry is an Egyptian astronaut who wants to inspire young people in Egypt. On her trip into space, she learned about the solar system. She explained that some planets are smaller, hotter, or farther than Earth. She realized how small Earth is in the universe.



حمّل تطبيق سلاح التلميذ

مميزات الكتاب:

- شرح قواعد اللغة (شرح مبسّط ووافٍ لقواعد اللغة بالإنجليزية والعربية). Language in use
- صفحات خاصّة بالواجب المنزلي. Homework
- أكواد QR (الخاصة بالمقاطع الصوتية). QR codes
- صفحات تحسين الإملاء وتعرّف الكلمات. Dictation
- صفحات للتدريب على حلّ سؤال الكتابة في الامتحان. Writing Station
- عرض لأهم الفقرات الواردة في كل وحدة. Important Paragraphs
- ملخصّ لكل وحدة. Unit Review
- اختبار على كل وحدة. Test
- أنشطة مُجمّعة من الكتاب المدرسي على كل وحدة. Student's Book Activities
- اختبارات نهائية شاملة. Final Tests

الآن بالمكتبات
كتب سلاح التلميذ في:

- اللغة العربية
- الرياضيات
- الدراسات الاجتماعية
- العلوم
- التربية الدينية
- تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات



أصدر هذه السلسلة منذ عام ١٩٦٠

الأستاذ: حمدي مصطفى



سلاح التلميذ

(02) 44810852 : فاكس (02) 44810854 - 44810853 - 44810151 : هاتف
 (02) 25860431 : فاكس (02) 25860455 / (02) 25862046 : ت

 selaheltelmeez
 010 20 400 700



جميع الحقوق محفوظة لشركة سلاح التلميذ للطباعة والنشر ©
يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين
أي جزء من هذا الكتاب بأي وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية
أو بالتصوير أو خلاف ذلك، إلا بعد إذن كتابي صريح من الناشر.



501070602